This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

E.L.T. 9/8/17

Harvard College Library

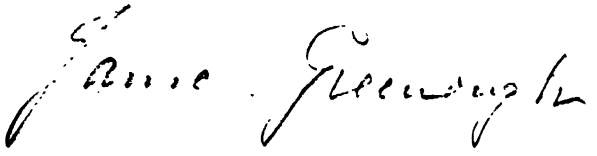
FROM THE ESTATE OF

JAMES BRADSTREET GREENOUGH

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN HARVARD COLLEGE
1883–1901

RECEIVED JULY 12, 1910

3 2044 097 055 909



FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD, BARTHOLOMEW,
BULLIONS AND MORRIS, GILDERSLEEVE,
AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,
ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN,
AND AUTHOR OF
"EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION," AND "LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION."

EIGHTEENTH EDITION.

CHICAGO:
S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.
1880.

Educ T 918.80.473

~~Educ T 968.77~~

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
JUL 12 1910
CAMBRIDGE, MASS.

COPYRIGHT, 1877.
BY S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

UNIVERSITY PRESS: JOHN WILSON & SON,
CAMBRIDGE.

PREFACE.

THESE Lessons are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's Commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to six of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated, — to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction.

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman history, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons. Complete vocabularies are added; in the Latin-English part, such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily understood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words. *The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflections and build up a vocabulary.*

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions, so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences. No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to the capacity of all classes; such an attempt would be futile. It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recitations to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To insure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book contains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of requiring inflections and translations to be written *every day* upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class, is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recitation, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me

necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons — American, English, and German — which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

University of Michigan, August, 1877.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

ABBREVIATIONS xii

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS . . 1

LESSON I. — NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION 3

LESSON II. — NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS . 4
Declension of deă and fīlĭă.

LESSON III. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION 6
Nouns in ŭs ; Gender.

LESSON IV. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS 7
Nouns in r and um. — Prepositions used with the Ablative.

LESSON V. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS . 9
Genitive Singular of Nouns in ĭŭs or ĭŭm ; Vocative of fīlĭŭs and proper names in ĭŭs. ; Declension of deŭs. — Use of in and sŭb.

LESSON VI. — ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . 11
Declension and Agreement of Adjectives.

LESSON VII. — ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*) 12
Genitive in ĭŭs and Dative in ī.

LESSON VIII. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPOSITION . . 14

LESSON IX. — VERBS : PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS . . . 15

LESSON X. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION 16
Personal Endings of the Active Voice ; Present Stem ; Present Indicative Active of ămŏ.

LESSON XI. — THE SIMPLE SENTENCE 18
Subject Nominative. — Agreement of Verb. — Direct Object.

LESSON XII. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION (*continued*) . . 19
Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of ămŏ.

LESSON XIII. — MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE ; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT ; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS . . 21

LESSON XIV. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION ; PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES ; THE PERFECT STEM . . 23

LESSON XV. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERATIVE MOOD ; USE OF THE IMPERATIVE 25

LESSON XVI. — VERBS : INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE 26

LESSON XVII. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE 27
Infinitive as Object; Subject of the Infinitive.

LESSON XVIII. — GENERAL EXERCISE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS . 29

LESSON XIX. — THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS 31

LESSON XX. — THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*) 32

LESSON XXI. — THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*) 33
Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.

LESSON XXII. — THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*) 35

LESSON XXIII. — THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*) 36

LESSON XXIV. — CONJUGATION OF THE VERB SUM 38

LESSON XXV. — PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE . . . 38

LESSON XXVI. — THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD 40

LESSON XXVII. — COMPOUNDS OF SUM. — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS 41

LESSON XXVIII. — CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE 43
Infinitive without Subject Accusative.

LESSON XXIX. — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO 44

LESSON XXX. — REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES . . 46

LESSON XXXI. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO 48
Definitions and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.

LESSON XXXII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*) . . 49

LESSON XXXIII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*) . . 51

LESSON XXXIV. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF AMO . . . 52

LESSON XXXV. — DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION . 53

LESSON XXXVI. — ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES 55

LESSON XXXVII. — ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION . . 56

LESSON XXXVIII. — ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*) 58

LESSON XXXIX. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . 59
Declension of Comparatives.

LESSON XL. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*) . . 61

LESSON XLI. — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES 62

LESSON XLII. — ADVERBS 64
Definition; Derivation; Classification; Syntax.

LESSON XLIII. — VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE 66

LESSON XLIV. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES 67
Accusative of Time.

LESSON XLV. — Verbs: Second Conjugation: Passive Voice 69

LESSON XLVI. — Deponent Verbs: Second Conjugation . 70

LESSON XLVII. — Fourth Declension 72
Declension of dŏmŭs.

LESSON XLVIII. — Fifth Declension 73

LESSON XLIX. — Verbs: Third Conjugation: Active Voice 74

LESSON L. — Verbs: Third Conjugation: Passive Voice . 76

LESSON LI. — Verbs: Fourth Conjugation: Active and Passive Voices 78

LESSON LII. — Third Conjugation: Verbs in io . . 79

LESSON LIII. — Deponent Verbs: Third and Fourth Conjugations 80
Ablative with certain Deponents.

LESSON LIV. — General Exercise: Place 82
Place to which; Place at or in which; Place from which.

LESSON LV. — Numerals. — Extent in Space 84

LESSON LVI. — Compound Nouns. — Ablative of Time . 86

LESSON LVII. — Pronouns: Personal, Possessive, and Reflexive 87

LESSON LVIII. — Pronouns (*continued*): Demonstrative . 89

LESSON LIX. — Pronouns (*continued*): Relative . . . 90
Declension; Agreement.

LESSON LX. — Pronouns (*continued*): Interrogative and Indefinite 92
Declension of ălĭquĭs.

LESSON LXI. — Conjunctions 93

LESSON LXII. — Classification of Sentences 95

LESSON LXIII. — Participles 96
Definitions; Distinctions of Tense; Used for a Subordinate Clause.

LESSON LXIV. — Ablative Absolute 98

LESSON LXV. — Irregular Verbs: Fero 100

LESSON LXVI. — Compounds of Fero. — Ablative of Specification 101

LESSON LXVII. — Irregular Verbs (*continued*): Volo and its Compounds 103

LESSON LXVIII. — Irregular Verbs (*continued*): Eo and Fio 105

LESSON LXIX. — Defective and Impersonal Verbs . . 106
Infinitive as Subject.

LESSON LXX. — The Periphrastic Conjugations. — Dative of Agent 108

LESSON LXXI. — Use of the Dative 110
Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

LESSON LXXII. — Use of the Ablative and Subjunctive . 112
Ablative with Comparatives. — Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command.

LESSON LXXIII. — Sequence of Tenses. — Subjunctive in Final Clauses 114

LESSON LXXIV. — Use of the Dative (*continued*) . . 116
Dative of the Person possessing; Two Datives.

LESSON LXXV. — Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses . . 118

LESSON LXXVI. — Use of the Genitive 120
Genitive with Adjectives; Genitive in Predicate; Genitive with certain Verbs.

LESSON LXXVII. — Conditional Sentences 122

LESSON LXXVIII. — Use of the Ablative 124
Ablative expressing Measure of Difference; Ablative of Quality.

LESSON LXXIX. — Concessive Clauses 126

LESSON LXXX. — Use of the Ablative (*continued*) . . 128
Ablative of Price; Ablative of Distance; Ablative with Adjectives.

LESSON LXXXI. — Causal Clauses 130

LESSON LXXXII. — Temporal Clauses 132

LESSON LXXXIII. — Subjunctive in Indirect Questions . 134

LESSON LXXXIV. — Oratio Obliqua. — Indirect Discourse 136

LESSON LXXXV. — Indirect Discourse (*continued*) . . . 138

LESSON LXXXVI. — Indirect Discourse (*continued*) . . 139

LESSON LXXXVII. — The Gerund 140

LESSON LXXXVIII. — The Gerundive 142

LESSON LXXXIX. — The Supine 144

LESSON XC. — The Roman Calendar. — Abbreviations . 146

LESSON XCI. — General Exercise 148

LESSON XCII. — General Exercise 150

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. Fables 153

II. Stories from Early Roman History 156

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English 167

II. English-Latin 211

REFERENCES TO ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S REVISED GRAMMAR 221

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G., Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.
A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.
abl., ablative.
acc., accusative.
act., active.
adj., adjective.
B., Bartholomew's Latin Grammar.
B. & M., Bullions and Morris's Latin Grammar.
cf., *confer*, compare.
comp., comparative.
conj., conjunction.
dat., dative.
dem., demonstrative.
dep., deponent.
Ex., Example.
f., feminine.
fr., from.
G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar.
gen., genitive.
H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, latest edition.
ind., indicative.
indecl., indeclinable.
indef., indefinite.
interrog., interrogative.
lit., literal, literally.
Ln., Lesson.
m., masculine.
n., neuter.
num., numeral.
part., participle.
pass., passive.
perf., perfect.
pers., person.
pl., plural.
poss., possessive.
prep., preposition.
pres., present.
pron., pronoun.
Ref., Reference.
rel., relative.
sc., *scilicet*, understand.
sing., singular.
subst., substantive.
voc., vocative.
Vy., Vocabulary.
w., with.

N. B. — The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (4) refer to such sections.

References to the revised edition of Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar will be found on page 221.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

THE following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included: e. g. 2 – 4 or *a* – *c* signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by *a*, *b*, and *c* are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

1. Alphabet. A. & G. **1**, 1, *a*, *b*: A. & S. **2**, 1; **3**, 1, 2; **4**: B. **3**–**10**, *w. fine print under* **6** *and* **7**: B. & M. ***3***; ***5***; ***6***; ***7***: G. **1**; **2**; **6**: H. **2**–**4**, *w. fine print under* **3** *and* **4**.

2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (*a*) *Roman Method.* A. & G. **1**, 5, *a*–*d*; **2**, 1, *a*–*c*: B. **11**–**15**; **16**–**21**: G. **3**; **4**; **7**; **8**; **9**: H. **15**, 1–4; **16**; **17**; **18**, 1–3.

(*b*) *English Method.* A. & G. **2**, 2, *a*–*d*; **1**, 5, *a*–*d*: A. & S. **7**–**12**, *w. fine print;* **17**–**23**: B. **377**, *the whole:* B. & M. ***11***; ***12***; ***13***, 1–6: H. **6**–**14**, *w. fine print.*

(*c*) *Continental Method.* A. & S. **6**; **17**–**23**: B. & M. ***14***, 1–5; ***13***, 1–6: H. **19**.

3. Quantity. A. & G. **3**, 1, 2, *a*–*e*, NOTE: A. & S. **5**, 1; **13**, 1–6, *w. fine print:* B. **12**, *a*–*c*: B. & M. ***8***; ***16***–***19***: G. **2**, 2; **10**–**13**, REMARK 1: H. **20**–**23**, *w. fine print.*

4. Accent. A. & G. **4**, 1, 2, *a*, *b*, NOTE: A. & S. **14**, 4, 5; **15**, 1, 2; **16**, 1–3: B. **22**–**25**: B. & M. ***20***, *w. fine print:* G. **14**: H. **24**; **25**.

5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. **5**, 1–4: A. & S. **24**, 1–4; **25**, 1–3; **26**, 1–7: B. **26**–**33**; **34**–**40**; **115**: B. & M. ***24***; ***25***, 1, 2; ***26***, 1, 2, *Obs.* 1–2; ***27***–***30***: G. **15**–**17**, *the whole:* H. **37**–**40**.

6. Gender. A. & G. **6**, 1, *a*, *c*, 2–4: A. & S. **27**–**30**; **33**; **34**, 1–4: B. **116**–**118**, I.–III.: B. & M. ***32***–***35***: G. **18**; **19**, I.–III.; **20**, 1–3: H. **41**; **42**, I.–III.

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. **7**, 1–7: A. & S. **35**, 1–2; **36**; **37**, 1–6: B. **119–120**, *w. fine print:* B. & M. ***31***; ***42***, 4. Case; ***43***, *w. fine print:* G. **21–24**: H. **44**; **45**, *w. fine print.*

8. Declension. A. & G. **8**, 1, *a*, *b*, 2, *a–f*: A. & S. **38**; **39**, I.; **40**, 2–10: B. **121**; **122**, REM. 1–5; **123**: B. & M. ***44–46***, *w. fine print;* ***47***; ***50***, Dec. I.: G. **25–26**, *the whole:* H. **46**, *w. fine print;* **47**.

Note.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left to the teacher. He may find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The following suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the portions of grammar referred to under "***1. Alphabet,***" he should turn to "LESSON I." and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After learning "***2,***" he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the rules under "***2,***" and divide the words which they form into syllables. ***Learn thoroughly; review often; use the blackboard.***

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

LESSON I.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.

9. Learn the *declension* of the model noun, the *stem* and *case-endings*, the *meaning* of each case, and the *rule of gender* for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. **9**, 1, 2, *c*; **8**, 1, *a*: A. & S. **41**; **39**, I.; **40**, 2–10: B. **121**; **123**; **124**: B. & M. ***46***; ***48***, *First*; ***51***; ***53***: G. **24**; **27**, REMARK 2; **28**: H. **46**, 1; **48**, 1, 2, 1)–3), 4.

10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent. Not only the Nominative, but also the *Genitive* and *Gender* of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

causă, ae,[1] f.[2]	*cause, reason.*
Gĕnāvă, ae, f.	*Geneva.*[3]
glōriă, ae, f.	*glory.*
linguă, ae, f.	*tongue, language.*
mĕmŏriă, ae, f.	*memory.*
rīpă, ae, f.	*bank* (of a stream).
viă, ae, f.	*way, road.*

[1] **ae** is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of **causă**, substitute **ae** for final **ă**: e. g. Nom. causă, Gen. causae.

[2] In the Vocabularies, f. stands for *feminine gender*, m. for *masculine*, and n. for *neuter*.

[3] For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabularies, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

N. B. Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often. Remember that *the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented.*

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe[1] each word.

1. Causă.[2] 2. Glōriārŭm.[3] 3. Rīpae. 4. Linguā.[4] 5. Mĕmŏriā.[5] 6. Linguās. 7. Viā. 8. Rīpās. 9. Mĕmŏriae. 10. Glōriae. 11. Causās. 12. Viăm. 13. Mĕmŏriās. 14. Viă. 15. Glōriăm. 16. Linguārŭm. 17. Causīs. 18. Rīpā. 19. Gĕnāvae.[6]

Write in Latin.

1. Of a[2] cause. 2. Of the causes. 3. With glory. 4. For glory. 5. With tongues. 6. In the language. 7. O Memory. 8. In memory. 9. Of the banks. 10. By the way.

Notes and Questions.

[1] To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).

[2] The Latin language has no article. In translating Latin nouns into English, *a*, *an*, or *the* may be supplied according to the sense. E. g. **causă** may be rendered *a cause*, *the cause*, or simply *cause*.

[3] Which syllable of **glōriārŭm** is accented? Why? (**4**) — *Numerals printed thus* (**4**) *refer to sections of this book.*

[4] What is the quantity of the penult of **linguā**? Why? (**3**)

[5] The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition *in* and the noun: e. g. **mĕmŏriā**, *in memory;* **linguā**, *in the language.*

[6] Locative Case; translate by the preposition *at* or *in* and the noun: e. g. **Rōmae**, *at Rome*, or *in Rome.*

LESSON II.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

***11. Declension of* deă *and* fīliă.** A. & G. **9**, 2, *e*: A. & S. **43**, 2, *last part:* B. **124**, REM. 1: B. & M. **57**: G. **27**, REMARK 3: H. **49**, 4.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. **56**, 1: A. & S. **235**: B. **329**, RULE LXXX.: B. & M. ***981:*** G. **417**: H. **432.**

VOCABULARY.

ăd, prep. w. acc.[1]	*to.*
angustiae,[2] **ārum,** f.	*narrow pass.*
circŭm, prep. w. acc.	*around.*
deă, ae, f.	*goddess.*
fīlĭă, ae, f.	*daughter.*
Mātrŏnă, ae, m..	*the Marne.*
pĕr, prep. w. acc.	*through.*
prōvinciă, ae, f.	*province.*
silvă, ae, f.	*forest.*
trans, prep. w. acc.	*across.*

[1] "prep. w. acc." signifies that **ăd** is a preposition used with the Accusative.

[2] **angustiae** is rarely used in the singular. Notice that it is equivalent to two English words, *narrow,* an adjective, and *pass,* a noun.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad rīpăm.[1] 2. Ad rīpăm Matrŏnae.[2] 3. Trans Matrŏnăm. 4. Deă.[3] 5. Deae. 6. Deārŭm. 7. Deābŭs. 8. Trans viăm. 9. Pĕr angustiās.[4] 10. Pĕr silvās. 11. Pĕr prōvinciăm. 12. Circŭm Gĕnāvăm. 13. Silvārŭm. 14. In silvīs.[5] 15. Ad fīliās deārŭm.

Write in Latin.

1. The daughter. 2. A daughter. 3. O daughter. 4. To the daughter of a goddess. 5. To[6] the Marne. 6. To[6] the banks of the Marne. 7. For the daughters. 8. Through the provinces. 9. Through the forest. 10. In[5] the forest. 11. In[7] the memory of the daughters.

Notes and Questions.

[1] When a noun is governed by a preposition, give the rule referred to under ***12.***

[2] Give the rule for gender of **Matrōnă**. (*6*)

[3] See LN. I., NOTE 2.

[4] What is the quantity of the penult of **angustias**? Why? (*3*) Which syllable then has the accent? (*4*)

[5] See LN. V., *19* and VY. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between **silvă** and **silvā**? In Latin the prep. in usually precedes the place *where*.

[6] Translate by the proper preposition.

[7] See LN. I., NOTE 5.

LESSON III.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.

13. Nouns in ŭs. A. & G. **10**, 1, 2, servŭs, 4, *a*: A. & S. **46**, dŏmĭnŭs: B. **126**; **127**, dŏmĭnŭs, REM. 4: B. & M. ***59***; ***61***, dŏmĭnŭs: G. **29**, hortŭs, REMARK 4: H. **51**, servŭs, 1, 2, 1)–3), 6.

14. Gender. A. & G. **10**, 3: A. & S. **46**: B. **127**, REM. 3: B. & M. ***71***: G. **30**: H. **51**.

VOCABULARY.

antĕ, prep. w. acc.	*before.*
ămīcĭtiă, ae, f.	*friendship.*
ămīcŭs, ī, m.	*friend.*
carrŭs, ī, m.	*cart, wagon.*
contrā, prep. w. acc.	*against.*
Germānī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Germans.*
lēgātŭs, ī, m.	*legate, lieutenant.*
nŭmĕrŭs, ī, m.	*number.*
ŏcŭlŭs, ī, m.	*eye.*
pŏpŭlŭs, ī, m.	*people.*
Rhēnŭs, ī, m.	*the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănŭs, ī, m.	*the Rhone.*

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Pŏpŭlī.[1] 2. Pŏpŭlĕ. 3. Pŏpŭlīs. 4. Amīcĭtiă pŏpŭlī. 5. Antĕ ŏcŭlōs pŏpŭlī. 6. Nŭmĕrŭs carrōrŭm. 7. Nŭmĕ-

rŭs Germānōrŭm. 8. Nŭmĕrŭs ămīcōrŭm. 9. Nŭmĕrŭs fīliārŭm. 10. Fīliă lēgātī.[2] 11. Amīcō pŏpŭlī. 12. Contrā ămīcŭm pŏpŭlī. 13. Contrā lēgātōs pŏpŭlī. 14. Trans Rhŏdănŭm. 15. Pŏpŭlī[3] ămīcīs. 16. Ad Germānōs.

Write in Latin.

1. Of a friend. 2. To a friend. 3. O friend. 4. Against a friend. 5. Of friends. 6. The friends of the Germans. 7. Against the friends of the Germans. 8. Before the eyes of the Germans. 9. Across the Rhine. 10. Before the lieutenant's[2] eyes. 11. The friendship of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What is the stem of **pŏpŭlī**? What are the case-endings of the Second Declension? Which cases are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension? What is the rule of gender for the Second Declension? (*14*) What is the rule of gender for the First Declension? What are the general rules for gender? (*6*)

[2] The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case: **fīliă lēgātī** is best rendered *the lieutenant's daughter.*

[3] The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic: e. g., **fīliă ămīcī**, *the friend's daughter;* but **ămīcī fīliă**, *the* FRIEND'S *daughter.*

LESSON IV.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in* r *and* um.** A. & G. **10**, 2: A. & S. **46**: B. **127**, *a*, *b*, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. ***60; 61; 63: G. **29**; **31**: H. **51**, 2, 3)-6), 4, 1).

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. A. & G. **56**, 1, *b*: A. & S. **241**: B. **178**: B. & M. ***470:*** G. **418**: H. **434.**

N. B. The list of prepositions used with the Ablative should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ăb,[1] prep. w. abl.	*from, by.*
ăgĕr, ăgrī, m.	*field, territory.*
bellŭm, ī, n.	*war.*
cŭm, prep. w. abl.	*with.*
ē, ex,[1] prep. w. abl.	*out of.*
frūmentŭm, ī, n.	*corn.*
gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, m.	*son-in-law.*
Helvētiī, ōrum, m.	*the Helvetii.*
puĕr, puĕrī, m.	*boy.*
regnŭm, ī, n.	*sovereignty, kingdom.*
sīnĕ, prep. w. abl.	*without.*
templŭm, ī, n.	*temple.*
vĭr, vĭrī, m.	*man.*

[1] **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **ăb** and **ex** before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse[1] **the nouns governed by prepositions.**

1. Puĕrī,[2] puĕrōrŭm. 2. Gĕnĕrō, gĕnĕrīs. 3. Agrī Helvētiōrŭm. 4. Cŭm vĭrīs. 5. Sīnĕ vĭrīs. 6. Ex templō.[3] 7. Cŭm Helvētiīs. 8. Sīnĕ regnō. 9. Sīnĕ frūmentō.[4] 10. Bellŭm cŭm Germānīs. 11. Ex prōvinciā. 12. Ab Helvētiīs. 13. Pĕr agrōs Helvētiōrŭm. 14. E Rhŏdănō.[5] 15. Cŭm ămīcō Helvētiōrŭm. 16. Regnŭm Germānōrŭm.

Write in Latin.

1. Of the war, of the wars. 2. For the war, for the wars. 3. The wars with the Helvetii. 4. By the Germans. 5. Without friendship. 6. With the man's[6] daughters. 7. Without the boys. 8. O boys. 9. Before the war with the Germans. 10. Without wagons. 11. Out of the Rhine. 12. Out of the temples of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

[1] *Form for parsing a noun.*—**cŭm vĭrīs: vĭrīs** is a masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, *vĭro;* declined, *vĭr, vĭrī, vĭrō, vĭrŭm, vĭr, vĭrō;*

plural, *vīrī, vīrōrŭm, vīrīs, vīrōs, vīrī, vīrīs;* it is in the Ablative plural and governed by the preposition **cŭm**; rule (*16*). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

[2] Which endings do nouns in **r** drop? ANS. The Nominative **ŭs** and the Vocative **ĕ**. To which declension does **puĕrī** belong? Why? **prōvinciă**? Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (*8*)

[3] Notice that the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of neuter nouns are alike and end in the plural in **ă**.

[4] What is the quantity of the penult of **frūmentō**? Why? Which syllable then is accented? (*3* and *4*)

[5] Which syllable of **Rhŏdănŭs** takes the accent?

[6] See LN. III., NOTE 2.

LESSON V.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

17. Nouns in **iŭs** or **iŭm** generally form the Genitive Singular with one **i**, while the accent remains unchanged: **Cassī**, *of Cassius;* **fīlī**, *of the son;* **consĭlī**, *of counsel.*

18. Vocative of **fīliŭs** ***and proper names in*** **iŭs.** A. & G. **10**, 4, *c*: A. & S. **52**: B. **128**, *a*: B. & M. ***65:*** G. **29**, 2: H. **52**, 2.

19. Use of **in** ***and*** **sŭb.** A. & G. **56**, 1, *c*: A. & S. **235**, (2): B. **179**: B. & M. ***987; 988:*** G. **419**: H. **435**, 1.

20. **deŭs** — stem DEO — is declined as follows:

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	deŭs,	deī, diī, dī.
Gen.	deī,	deōrŭm, deūm.
Dat.	deō,	deīs, diīs, dīs.
Acc.	deŭm,	deōs.
Voc.	deŭs,	deī, diī, dī.
Abl.	deō,	deīs, diīs, dīs.

VOCABULARY.

Cassiŭs, ĭ, m.	*Cassius.*
castrŭm, ĭ, n.	*fort;* pl. *camp.*

concĭlĭŭm, ī, n.	*council, assembly.*
consĭlĭŭm, ī, n.	*counsel, plan.*
deŭs, ī, m. (see **20**),	*god.*
ĕquŭs, ī, m.	*horse.*
ĕt, conj.	*and.*
fīlĭŭs, ī, m.	*son.*
ĭn, prep. w. acc. *or* abl.	*into, in.*
jŭgŭm, ī, n.	*yoke.*
Lūcĭŭs, ī, m.	*Lucius.*
oppĭdŭm, ī, n.	*town.*
sŭb, prep. w. acc. *or* abl.	*under.*

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Ad deōs ĕt[1] deās. 2. Cŭm deīs ĕt deābŭs. 3. Antĕ ŏcŭlōs deōrŭm ĕt deārŭm. 4. In[2] oppĭdō. 5. In[2] oppĭdŭm. 6. In castrā[3] Germānōrŭm. 7. Consĭlĭō[4] deōrŭm. 8. Sĭnĕ consĭlĭīs. 9. In concĭlĭō Helvētiōrŭm. 10. Sŭb jŭgŭm. 11. Cŭm ĕquīs ĕt carrīs. 12. Cŭm ĕquīs ĕt carrīs Lūcī. 13. Fīlĭŭs Lūcī Cassī. 14. Fīlī[5] Lūcī Cassī. 15. Pĕr oppĭdă Germānōrŭm.[6] 16. Germānōrŭm[6] oppĭdă. 17. Trans Rhēnŭm ĕt Rhŏdănŭm. 18. Gĕnĕr Lūcī. 19. Cassī.[5]

Write in Latin.

1. To sons and daughters. 2. With sons and daughters. 3. Before the eyes of sons and daughters. 4. Into[2] the towns of the Germans. 5. In[2] the Germans' camp.[3] 6. Into the council of the Germans. 7. By the plans of the gods. 8. O son[5] of Cassius. 9. O Cassius.[5] 10. Under the yoke.

Notes and Questions.

[1] **ĕt** is a conjunction; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. **ĕt** connects similar constructions; hence **deās** is governed the same as **deōs** by **ăd.**

[2] Observe carefully the difference in meaning between **ĭn** used with the Accusative and **ĭn** used with the Ablative.

[3] Observe that **castrŭm** means in the Singular *a fort,* but in the Plural *a camp* (military camp); a Roman camp was surrounded by a trench and a rampart.

[4] See *17*.

[5] See *18* and A. & G. **53**: A. & S. **240**: B. **218**, RULE VI.: B. & M. *974*: G. **194**, REM. 3: H. **369**.

[6] What is the difference between **oppĭdă Germānōrŭm** and **Germānōrŭm oppĭdă**? LN. III., NOTE 3.

LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

21. Learn the declension of **bŏnŭs (cārŭs).** A. & G. **16**, 1: A. & S. **104**; **105**, 1, 2: B. **154**; **155**, 1: B. & M. *189*; *190*, 1: G. **15**, I., 2; **33**: H. **146–148**.

22. Agreement of Adjectives. A. & G. **47**: A. & S. **205**: B. **266**, RULE LI.: B. & M. *650*: G. **285**: H. **438**.

VOCABULARY.

bŏnŭs, ă,[1] **ŭm,**[1]	*good.*
cārŭs, ă, ŭm,	*dear, beloved.*
exemplŭm, ī, n.	*example.*
lacrĭmă, ae, f.	*tear.*
magnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*great, big, large.*
mălŭs, ă, ŭm,	*bad.*
multŭs, ă, ŭm,	*much;* pl. *many.*
parvŭs, ă, ŭm,	*small.*
rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm,	*remaining.*
Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Roman.*

[1] **ă** and **ŭm** are the feminine and neuter endings: recite as if it were printed **bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnŭm.**

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.[1]

1. Vĭr bŏnŭs,[1] fīliă bŏnă,[2] exemplŭm bŏnŭm. 2. Vĭrī mălī, fīliae[3] mălae, exemplă mălă. 3. Cŭm fīliā cārā. 4. Cŭm fīliīs[4] cārīs. 5. Glōriă magnă Lūcī Cassī.[4] 6. Exemplō pŏpŭlī Rōmānī. 7. Multīs cŭm lacrĭmīs. 8. Puĕrī

multī ět parvī.[5] 9. Oppĭdă multă ět magnă. 10. Pĕr multōs agrōs. 11. In rĕlĭquă oppĭdă. 12. Amīcŭs pŏpŭlī Rōmānī. 13. Cŭm amīcīs pŏpŭlī Rōmānī. 14. In prōvinciăm magnăm. 15. Carrī multī ět parvī. 16. In templīs magnīs Germānōrŭm.

Write in Latin.

1. Through small[6] fields. 2. Through small towns. 3. Through a small province. 4. Through the remaining towns. 5. The friendship of the Roman[7] people. 6. Many good boys.[5] 7. Many beloved daughters. 8. Many bad men. 9. In a large temple. 10. With many friends.

Notes and Questions.

[1] *Form for parsing an adjective.* — **vĭr bŏnŭs** : **bŏnŭs** is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions; Stems, BŎNO and BŎNA; declined, *bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnŭm; bŏnī, bŏnae, bŏnī; bŏnō, bŏnae, bŏnō; bŏnŭm, bŏnăm, bŏnŭm; bŏnĕ, bŏnă, bŏnŭm; bŏnō, bŏnā, bŏnō;* Plural, *bŏnī, bŏnae, bŏnă; bŏnōrŭm, bŏnārŭm, bŏnōrŭm; bŏnīs, bŏnīs, bŏnīs; bŏnōs, bŏnās, bŏnă; bŏnī, bŏnae, bŏnă; bŏnīs, bŏnīs, bŏnīs;* it is in the Nominative Singular Masculine to agree with its noun **vĭr**; rule (*22*). Repeat the rule.

[2] The adjective like the Genitive follows its noun unless emphatic.

[3] What irregularity in declension have **deă** and **filiă**?

[4] What irregularities in declension have **filiŭs** and **Cassiŭs**? (*17* and *18*)

[5] The Romans wrote **multi ět parvi**, *many* AND *small*; the English write *many small*, without the conjunction.

[6] Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and case as its noun (see *22*).

[7] In the Latin expression equivalent to *Roman people*, the adjective always follows its noun.

LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*).

23. A. & G. **16**, 1, *a*: A. & S. **105**, 3; **106**: B. **155**, 2, 3: B. & M. *190*, 2, 3: G. **34**: H. **149**, **150**.

24. Genitive in ĭŭs and Dative in ī. A. & G. **16, 1,** *b*: A. & S. **107,** REMARK 1, 2: B. **155,** 4, REM. 1: B. & M. ***191:*** G **35,** REMARK: H. **151,** 2, 3.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in **ĭus** and Dative in **ī** should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

aegĕr, aegră, aegrŭm,	*sick.*
ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd,	*other, another.*
lĭbĕr, lĭbĕră, lĭbĕrŭm,	*free.*
mĭsĕr, mĭsĕră, mĭsĕrŭm,	*wretched.*
nullŭs, ă, ŭm,	*none, no.*
pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm,	*beautiful.*
sōlŭs, ă, ŭm,	*alone.*
tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrŭm,	*tender, delicate.*
tōtŭs, ă, ŭm,	*whole, entire.*
ullŭs, ă, ŭm,	*any.*
ūnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*one.*

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.

1. Cŭm fīlĭīs tĕnĕrīs. 2. Ad vĭrōs aegrōs.[1] 3. Ad ălĭōs vĭrōs aegrōs. 4. Pĕr agrōs pulchrōs. 5. Ab Helvētiīs lĭbĕrīs. 6. Contrā lēgātŭm mĭsĕrŭm. 7. Fīliae multae ĕt pulchrae.[2] 8. Fīliārŭm pulchrārŭm. 9. Fīlĭīs ĕt fīliābŭs pulchrīs. 10. Vĭrī multī ĕt mĭsĕrī. 11. Tōtīs castrīs.[3] 12. Pĕr Helvētiōs sōlōs. 13. Unā pĕr Helvētiōs viă. 14. Aliă[4] viă nullă. 15. Ullā sĭnĕ causā. 16. Aliī ămīcō. 17. Aliī ămīcī. 18. Alĭus ămīcī. 19. Unŭs ē fīlĭīs[5] Cassī. 20. In[6] ălĭŭd[7] oppĭdŭm.

Notes and Questions.

[1] How does **fīlĭŭs Cassī** differ from **Cassī fīlĭŭs**? (LN. III., NOTE 3). How does **ad vīros aegros** differ from **ăd aegros vīros**? (LN. VI., NOTE 2).

[2] See LN. VI., NOTE 5. [3] See LN. I., NOTE 5.

[4] What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of **ălĭŭs**? The Genitive Singular? The Dative Singular?

[5] Translate **ūnŭs ē fīlĭis** as if read **ūnŭs fīlĭōrŭm.**

[6] How is **in** to be rendered when used with the Ablative?

[7] What adjectives have their Genitive in **ĭŭs** and Dative in **ī**?

LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPOSITION.

25. Appositives. A. & G. **46**, 1 : A. & S. **204** : B. **265**, RULE L. : B. & M. ***622*** ; G. **318**; **319** : H. **352**, 2 ; **363**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **ăd oppĭdŭm Gĕnāvăm** (appositive), *to the town of Geneva.*
2. **Tĭtŭs Lăbiēnŭs lēgātŭs** (appositive), *Titus Labienus the lieutenant.*

VOCABULARY.

aedĭfĭcĭŭm, ĭ, n.	*building, edifice.*
armă,[1] **ōrŭm,** n.	*arms, weapons.*
Belgae, ārŭm, m.	*the Belgae.*
cōpiă, ae, f.	*plenty;* pl. *troops.*
Galliă, ae, f.	*Gaul.*
Lăbiēnŭs, ĭ, m.	*Labienus.*
lŏcŭs,[2] **ĭ,** m.	*place.*
mātūrŭs, a, um,	*ripe.*
pĕrīcŭlŭm, ĭ, n.	*danger.*
prīvātŭs, a, um,	*private.*
Sēquănī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Sequani.*
Tĭtŭs, ĭ, m.	*Titus.*
victōriă, ae, f.	*victory.*

[1] **armă**, like the English *arms*, is used only in the plural.

[2] **lŏcŭs** is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows: Nom., *lŏcī* and *lŏcă;* Gen., *lŏcōrŭm;* Dat., *lŏcīs;* Acc., *lŏcōs* and *lŏcă;* Voc., *lŏcī* and *lŏcă;* Abl., *lŏcīs.*

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns which are in apposition or governed by prepositions, and the adjectives.

1. Ad Tĭtŭm Lăbiēnŭm lēgātŭm.[1] 2. Cŭm fīliābŭs[2] pulchrīs Tĭtī Lăbiēnī lēgātī. 3. Pĕr agrōs magnōs Tĭtī Lăbiēnī lēgātī. 4. Ex oppĭdō Gĕnēvā.[3] 5. In oppĭdŭm Gĕnēvăm. 6. Magnō cŭm pĕrīcŭlō. 7. Rĕlĭquă prīvātă aedĭfĭcĭă. 8. Frūmentŭm mātūrŭm ĭn agrīs. 9. Cōpiă frūmentī mātūrī

in agrīs. 10. In Galliăm, in Galliā. 11. Ex[4] Galliā, ā[4] Galliā. 12. Victōriă magnă Sēquănōrŭm. 13. Cŭm cōpiīs Belgārŭm. 14. Trans Rhŏdănŭm[5] ĭn Galliăm. 15. Pĕr multă lŏcă. 16. Pĕrīcŭlŭm deōrŭm ĕt deārŭm. 17. Nullă victōriă sĭnĕ armīs.

Write in Latin.

1. Through the entire town. 2. Through the entire town of Geneva.[3] 3. Into the province of Gaul. 4. With the troops of Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 5. The remaining private wagons. 6. Into no place. 7. In one place. 8. With many dangers. 9. With many sons and daughters. 10. The Sequani alone.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What are the general rules for gender? (*6*) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension? (*9*) Of the Second Declension? (*14*)

[2] What irregular case-endings have **deă** and **filiă**? (*11*)

[3] See *25* and EXAMPLE 1.

[4] **ē, ex** signifies *out of, from,* in the sense of *from within* a place; **ā, ăb,** *from,* in the sense of *from near* a place.

[5] Which syllable of **Rhŏdănŭs** takes the accent? Why? (*4*) Which of **Sēquănī**?

[6] With which cases are prepositions used in Latin? Which prepositions are used only with the Ablative? Which with both the Ablative and Accusative? When are **ĭn** and **sŭb** used with the Ablative? When with the Accusative? (*16, 19*)

LESSON IX.

VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar: Use of the Verb; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs; Active Voice; Use of the Indicative Mood; Use of the Present Tense; Person and Number; Conjugation.

A. & G. **23**, 1, 3; **24**, 1; **58**, 2; **30**.

A. & S. **140**; **141**, I., II.; **259**; **145**; **146**; **147**; **149**, 1, 2.

B. **26**; **41**, *b*: **43**; **44**; **57**; **63**; **68**; **292**, RULE LVI.

B. & M. ***258***; ***259***, 1–3; ***262***; ***266***; ***270***; ***271***; ***272***; ***1079***; ***1080***.

G. **15**, III.; **109**; **204**; **245**; **246**; **218**; **116**; **117**.

H. **192**; **193**; **194**; **195**, I.; **474**; **466**; **199**; **200**.

LESSON X.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

27. ***Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem.*** A. & G. **28**, 1, *a*; **5**, 2; **27**, 5: A. & S. **147**, 3; **150**, 1, 2: B. **64**, *a*; **69**: B. & M. ***333***, ACTIVE VOICE; ***274***: G. **111**: H. **247**, PERSON., ACT., MEANING; **250**.

28. ***The Present Stem***[1] is found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending **rĕ** in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and **ĕrĕ** in the Third: e. g. PUTĀrĕ is a Present Infinitive Active and PUTA its Present Stem; so DIC from DĪCĕrĕ.

29. Learn the *conjugation*[2] and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of **ămŏ**. A. & G. **31**: A. & S. **155**: B. **74**: B. & M. ***282***: G. **119**: H. **205**; **247**, 1.

30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (***27***) to the Present Stem (***28***); also that the *first person singular* takes the termination **ō**, which absorbs the final stem-vowel **a**.

VOCABULARY.

ămŏ, ămārĕ,	*love.*[3]
convŏcō, convŏcārĕ,	*call together, summon.*
confirmō, confirmārĕ,	*establish, strengthen.*
importō, importārĕ,	*bring in, import.*
occŭpō, occŭpārĕ,	*seize, occupy.*
vastō, vastārĕ,	*lay waste, devastate.*

Pronounce; translate; inflect the verbs and give their elements.[4]

1. Importās,[5] importātĭs, importāmŭs. 2. Amāmŭs, ămant, ămăt. 3. Convŏcŏ, convŏcās, convŏcăt. 4. Convŏcāmŭs, convŏcātĭs, convŏcant. 5. Confirmant, confirmātĭs, confirmāmŭs. 6. Confirmăt, confirmās, confirmŏ. 7. Occŭpŏ, ămās, importăt. 8. Importŏ, ămātĭs, occŭpant. 9. Occŭpāmŭs, importātĭs, āmŏ. 10. Occŭpās, occŭpăt, occŭpātĭs.

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, he is loving. 2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate. 3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon. 4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates. 5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

[1] The Present Stem is named *The First Stem* in some grammars; in others, *The First Root.*

[2] The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

[3] Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with aid of the grammar.

[4] The elements of a verb in the present tense are *the stem* and *personal ending:* e. g. **ămāmŭs** has the stem **ămā**, signifying *love*, and the personal ending **mŭs**, signifying *we.*

[5] **importās** may be rendered *you are importing, you do import,* or *you import;* translate each verb the three ways.

[6] What is the Present Stem of **pŭtārŏ**? What does the personal ending **nt** signify? **mŭs**? **s**? **tĭs**? Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (*28*)

LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

31. A. & G. **45**, 1, *a*, 2, 7, 8: A. & S. **200**, 2, 3, 5; **201**, 1–3, 10; **203**, 1, 2, III., 6–9: B. **203**, *a–g*: B. & M. ***616***, 1, 4–10; ***618–620***: G. **192**; **193**: H. **344**; **345**, I.; **346**, I.; **347**, 1, 2; **351**; **353**.

32. ***Subject Nominative.*** A. & S. **49**, 2: A. & S. **209**, (*a.*): B. **205**, RULE I.: B. & M. ***633***: G. **194**: H. **367**.

33. ***Agreement of Verb.*** A. & G. **49**: A. & S. **209**, (*b.*): B. **287**, RULE LV.: B. & M. ***634***: G. **202**: H. **460**.

34. ***Direct Object.*** A. & G. **52**, 1: A. & S. **229**: B. **212**, RULE VII.: B. & M. ***712***: G. **329**: H. **371**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Puĕr** (subject) **ămăt** (predicate), *the boy loves.*
2. **Tĭtŭs concĭlĭŭm**[1] (direct object) **convŏcăt**, *Titus summons a council.*

VOCABULARY.

dē, prep. w. abl.,	*down from, concerning, for.*
expugnŏ, expugnārĕ,	*storm, capture.*
Gallŭs, ī, m.	*a Gaul.*
ĭmpĕrĭŭm, ī, n.	*empire, supreme power.*
pugnŏ, pugnārĕ,	*fight, contend.*
Rōmānŭs, ī, m.	*a Roman.*
servŭs, ī, m.	*slave.*
vexŏ, vexārĕ,	*disturb, harass.*

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassĭŭs[2] oppĭdŭm[3] expugnăt.[4] 2. Helvētiī oppĭdŭm expugnant. 3. Gallī tōtŭm[5] oppĭdŭm occŭpant. 4. Gallī multă oppĭdă occŭpant. 5. Sēquănī agrōs vastant. 6. Agrōs pulchrōs vastāmŭs.[6] 7. Agrōs magnōs vastās. 8. Cassĭŭs concĭlĭŭm[7] convŏcăt. 9. Germānī Gallōs vexant. 10. Rō-

mānī oppĭdŭm Gĕnēvăm[8] expugnant. 11. Tĭtŭs Lăbiēnŭs lēgātŭs oppĭdŭm occŭpăt. 12. Rōmānī dē impĕriō[9] pugnant. 13. Dē impĕriō pugnāmŭs. 14. Dē impĕriō pugnātĭs.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights. 2. The slaves are fighting.[10] 3. The Gauls are storming the town.[1] 4. The Gauls storm many towns. 5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields. 6. The Gauls fight for empire. 7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva. 8. Cassius the legate summons a large council. 9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.

[2] See *32* and Ln. IV., Note 1. [3] See *34*.

[4] Why is **expugnăt** in the third person singular? (*33*)

[5] See *24* and *22*. Which adjectives have their Genitive in **ĭŭs** and Dative in **ī**?

[6] The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone; hence **vastāmŭs** includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate: *devastate we.* vastā - mŭs.

[7] See *17*. [8] See *25*.

[9] See *16*. [10] See Ln. X., Note 5.

LESSON XII.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION. — IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of **ămŏ**. A. & G. **28**, 3, *a* (*for endings*); **31** (*for conjugation*): A. & S. **155**: B. **72**, *Indicative;* **74**: B. & M. *282*: G. **111**, 1–3; **119**: H. **205**; **247**, 1; **243**, Tense-Signs, Ind., Imp., Fut.

36. Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses. A. & G. **58**, 3, 4: A. & S. **145**, II., III.: B. **57**: B. & M. ***1087; 1090***: G. **222**; **234**: H. **468**; **470**.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, **ba** in the Imperfect and **bi** in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination **o**, like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future **u** takes the place of **i**.

VOCABULARY.

Aquĭlēĭă, ae, f.	*Aquileia.*
Aquĭtāniă, ae, f.	*Aquitania.*
Aquĭtānī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Aquitani.*
circŭm, prep. w. acc.	*around, near.*
Helvētiŭs, ă, ŭm,	*of the Helvetii.*
hiĕmŏ, hiĕmārĕ,	*pass the winter.*
sŭpĕrŏ, sŭpĕrārĕ,	*overcome.*

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.[1]

1. Tĭtus regnum occŭpăt. 2. Tĭtus regnum occŭpābăt. 3. Tĭtus regnum occŭpābĭt. 4. Regnum occŭpābāmŭs. 5. Regnum occŭpābĭmŭs. 6. Regnum occŭpābŏ. 7. Cōpiae[2] circŭm Aquilēiam[3] hiĕmābant. 8. Aquĭtāni circŭm Gĕnēvam hiĕmābunt. 9. Aquĭtānos sŭpĕrābĭs. 10. Rōmāni Helvētios sŭpĕrābunt. 11. Galli multa lŏca[4] ĭn Aquĭtāniā[5] occŭpant. 12. Multi Germāni agros Helvētios vastābant.

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall overcome. 2. You are storming, you were storming, you will storm. 3. Titus will storm the town. 4. Titus was storming the town. 5. Titus storms many towns. 6. The Romans will pass the winter near Aquileia. 7. The Aquitani are passing the winter near Geneva. 8. The Gauls were fighting for[6] empire. 9. The Romans fight for glory.

Notes and Questions.

[1] The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are *the stem, tense-sign, personal ending:* e. g. *love will you* **ămā - bī - tĭs** has the Stem **ămā**, *love;* the Future Tense-Sign **bī**, *will;* the Personal Ending **tĭs**, *you.*

[2] What meaning has **cōpiae** in the Singular? LN. VIII., Vy.

[3] See *12.* [4] Decline **lŏcă.** LN. VIII., Vy., 2.

[5] See *19.*

[6] *For*, in the sense of *concerning, about*, is to be rendered by **dē.**

[7] How is the Present Stem found? (*28*) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it — Present, Imperfect, Future — denote *incomplete* action.

LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

38. Modifiers. A. & G. **45**, 3, *a, b*, 4: A. & S. **202**, 6, I., 1, (1.)-(3.), 2; **203**, 5, I., 1, (1.)-(4.), 2: B. **288**, *a*: B. & M. ***1401***, 1-4; ***1405***, II., 1-4: H. **349**; **352**, I., II.; **354**, I., 1, 2, II., 1, 2.

39. Indirect Object. A. & G. **51**, 1: A. & S. **223**: B. **239**, RULE XXVIII.: B. & M. ***818***; ***819***: G. **344**: H. **384**, I., II.

40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. **50**: A. & S. **211**: B. **226**; **230**, RULE XIX.: B. & M. ***751***: G. **357**; **358**; **360**: H. **395.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Tītus Lăbiēnus lēgātus consĭlia Gallōrum ēnunciăt,**[1] *Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.*
2. **Cassius Tīto fīliam in mātrimōnium dăt,**[2] *Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.*

Notes on the Examples.

[1] Of this sentence, **Tītus Lăbiēnus** is *the subject* and is modified by **lēgātus**, *an appositive;* **consĭlia Gallōrum ēnunciăt** is *the predicate* and is made up of *the verb* **ēnunciăt** and its *modifier* **consĭlia**, *a direct object;* **consĭlia** is modified by **Gallōrum**, *a genitive.*

[2] Of this sentence, **Cassius** is the subject and is not modified; **Tĭto fĭliam in mātrĭmōnium dăt** is the predicate, and is made up of the verb **dăt** and its modifiers, viz: **Tĭto**, an indirect object; **fĭliam**, a direct object; and **in mātrĭmōnium**, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

dŏ, dărĕ,	*give.*
ēnunciŏ, ēnunciārĕ,	*report.*
mātrĭmōnium, i, n.	*marriage.*
in mātrĭmōnium dărĕ,	*to give in marriage.*

Pronounce; translate; analyze;[1] conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius[2] consĭlia Belgārum[3] ēnunciābĭt. 2. Rōmānis[4] consĭlia Belgārum ēnunciābĭt. 3. Tĭtus fīliam ĭn[5] mātrĭmōnium dăbĭt.[6] 4. Lēgātō fīliam ĭn mātrĭmōnium dăbĭt. 5. Lēgātis fīlias ĭn mātrĭmōnium dămŭs. 6. Helvētii multa lŏca ĭn Aquītānia occŭpant. 7. Cassius concĭlium Rōmānōrum convŏcăt. 8. Deos[7] et deas[8] ĭn templa convŏcăt. 9. Rōmāni oppĭda multa et magna[9] expŭgnābant. 10. Amīcĭtiam cŭm Helvētiis confirmant. 11. Tōtum[10] oppĭdum ullo[10] sĭnĕ pĕrīcŭlo occŭpābĭtĭs. 12. Galli agros multos et pulchros[9] ĭn Aquītānia vastābunt.

Notes and Questions.

[1] To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate; the modifiers of the subject, if any; the verb, and its modifiers, if any; SEE NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES.

[2] What is the Genitive and Vocative of **Cassius**? (*17* and *18*)

[3] See *40*. [4] See *39*.

[5] A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase;* when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase;* when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase.*

[6] Observe that in **dŏ** the characteristic **a** is short; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

[7] See *20*. [8] See *11*.

[9] See LN. VI., NOTE 5. [10] See *24*.

LESSON XIV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of **ămŏ.** A. & G. **28**, 3, *a*; **31**: A. & S. **155**: B. **75**: B. & M. ***282***: G. **120**: H. **205**; **243**, TENSE-SIGNS of PLUP. and F. PERF.; **247**, 1, 2.

42. Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses. A. & G. **58**, 6, 7: A. & S. **145**, V., VI.: B. **57**: B. & M. ***1096***; ***1098***: G. **233**; **236**: H. **472**; **473**.

43. What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? A. & G. **27**, 3; **58**, 5: A. & S. **145**, IV. and REMARK: B. **60**: B. & M. ***1092***; ***1093***: G. **226**; **227**; **231**: H. **471**, I., II.

44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like the same tenses of **ămŏ.** These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem and denote *completed action.*

45. The Perfect Stem is found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping the ending **ī**: e. g. Perfect Indicative VASTĀVĪ, Perfect Stem VASTĀV.

VOCABULARY.

confirmŏ,	**confirmārĕ,**	**confirmāvī,**[1]	*establish, strengthen.*
convŏcŏ,	**convŏcārĕ,**	**convŏcāvī,**	*call together, summon.*
dŏ,	**dărĕ,**	**dĕdī,**[4]	*give.*
expugnŏ,	**expugnārĕ,**	**expugnāvī,**	*storm, capture.*
hiĕmŏ,	**hiĕmāre,**	**hiĕmāvī,**	*pass the winter.*
occŭpŏ,	**occŭpāre,**	**occŭpāvī,**	*seize, occupy.*
Rōmă, ae, f.			*Rome.*
sŭpĕrŏ,	**sŭpĕrārĕ,**	**sŭpĕrāvī,**	*overcome, subdue.*
vastŏ,	**vastārĕ,**	**vastāvī,**	*lay waste, devastate.*
vexŏ,	**vexārĕ,**	**vexāvī,**	*disturb, harass.*

[1] In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active are given.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis[1] of the Indicative Mood of each verb.

1. Cassius multos agros vastāvĭt.[2] 2. Concĭlium Gallōrum convŏcāvĕrŏ.[3] 3. Galli tōtum oppĭdum occŭpāvĕrant. 4. Helvētii castra occŭpāvĕrint. 5. Rōmānī agrum Helvētium vastāvērunt.[2] 6. Amīcĭtiam cŭm Rōmānis confirmāvĕrĭt. 7. Cōpiae circŭm Rōmam hiĕmāvērĕ.[2] 8. Cassius Tĭto fīliam ĭn mātrĭmōnium dĕdĭt.[2] 9. Rōmānī Helvētios vexāvērunt.[2] 10. Sēquănī Germānos sŭpĕrāvērunt.[2] 11. Circŭm Rōmam hiĕmāvĕrant. 12. Oppĭdum Aquĭlēiam occŭpāvī.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town. 2. The Aquitani will have stormed the town. 3. The Aquitani had stormed the town. 4. I have given a daughter in marriage. 5. I had given a daughter in marriage. 6. I shall have given a daughter in marriage. 7. I gave a daughter in marriage to the son of Cassius. 8. You have summoned a council of Romans. 9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

[1] A *Synopsis* of the Indicative Mood consists of the *First Person Singular of each tense:* e. g. the synopsis of **vastāvĭt** is *vastŏ, vastābăm, vastābŏ, vastāvī, vastāvĕrăm, vastāvĕrŏ.*

[2] Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses: **Cassius vastāvĭt,** *Cassius has laid waste,* and *Cassius laid waste.* (See *43*)

[3] Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they denote? (*44*) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do they denote? (Ln. XII., Note 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action *is completed* in what time? (*42*) The Future Perfect? The Present Tense denotes that an action *is going on* in what time? (*26*) The Imperfect Tense? (*36*) The Future Tense? Give the elements of each verb in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses: e. g. **ămāv-ĕra-nt** *loved had they* has the Perfect Stem **ămāv,** *loved;* the Pluperfect Tense-Sign **ĕra,** *had;* the Personal Ending **nt,** *they.*

[4] See Ln. XIII., Note 6; observe that the *Perfect stem* of **dō** is **dĕd,** not **dāv.**

LESSON XV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of **ămŏ** and its meanings. A. & G. **31**; **28**, 1, *c, for personal endings:* A. & S. **155**: B. **74**, a; **64**, *b, for personal endings:* B. & M. ***282:*** G. **119**: H. **205**; **247**, 3, *for personal endings.*

47. Use of the Imperative. A. & G. **57**, 7: A. & S. **267**: B. **312**, RULE LXXI.: B. & M. ***1110:*** G. **259**: H. **535.**

VOCABULARY.

ăvŭs, ī, m.	*grandfather.*
Divitiăcŭs, ī, m.	*Divitiacus.*
jŭvŏ, jŭvārĕ, jūvī,	*help, aid.*
mātūrŏ, mātūrārĕ, mātūrāvī,	*make haste, hasten.*
nātūrā, ae, f.	*nature.*
nunciŏ, nunciārĕ, nunciāvī,	*announce.*
proeliŭm, ī, n.	*battle.*
sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, m.	*father-in-law.*
vītŏ, vītārĕ, vītāvī,	*avoid, shun.*
vŏcŏ, vŏcārĕ, vŏcāvī,	*call.*

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (*47*)

1. Jŭvā,[1] mātūrā, nunciā. 2. Jŭvātŏ, mātūrātŏ, nunciātŏ. 3. Jŭvātĕ, mātūrātĕ, nunciātĕ. 4. Vītā, Divitiăcĕ,[2] proeliŭm. 5. Vītā, O ăvĕ,[3] pĕrīcŭlŭm. 6. Dătĕ, vĭrī, Rōmānīs[4] armă.[5] 7. Vŏcā, sŏcĕr, puĕrōs. 8. Mātūrā, Cassī,[6] Tĭtō[4] nunciārĕ. 9. Mātūrātĕ, vĭrī, oppĭdŭm expugnārĕ. 10. Vastātĕ agrōs. 11. Vastātĕ multōs agrōs. 12. Vastātĕ tōtăm prōvinciăm.

Write in Latin.

1. Call the men. 2. Help the boys. 3. Shun the danger. 4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus. 5. Summon a council, Cassius. 6. Call the men, my grandfather. 7. Announce to Cassius. 8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus. 9. Men, give arms to the Belgae. 10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (***28***); that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.

[2] See LN. V., NOTE 5.

[3] **O** ăvĕ, *O grandfather*, or *my grandfather*.

[4] See ***39***.

[5] See LN. VIII., VY.

[6] See ***18***.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson? The Perfect Stem? Which Stem is used in the Imperative? Does the Imperative then denote *incomplete* or *completed* action? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative?

LESSON XVI.

VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

48. Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of **ămŏ.** A. & G. **24,** 4; **25; 26; 28,** 3, *b*; **31:** A. & S. **143,** 4; **148,** 1–3; **155:** B. **51; 53,** *a–d*; **65; 66; 72; 74,** a; **75:** B. & M. ***264,*** IV.; ***265; 282:*** G. **110; 119; 120:** H. **196,** II., 1–4; **205; 248,** *Active.*

49. Principal Parts (***Stem Forms***). A. & G. **30,** 5: A. & S. **151,** 4: B. **73:** B. & M. ***275:*** G. **118:** H. **201; 202.**

50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in **ŭm** by dropping the **ŭm:** e. g. CŪRĀTŭm is a Supine in **ŭm** and CŪRĀT its Supine Stem.

51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (***28***), the Perfect (***45***), and the Supine (***50***). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.[1]

ămŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**[2]	*love.*
cūrŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**[2]	*care for.*
dŏ,	**dărĕ,**[3]	**dĕdī,**	**dătŭm,**[3]	*give.*
jŭvŏ,	**jŭvārĕ,**	**jūvī,**	**jūtŭm,**	*help, aid.*

nĕgō,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*deny.*
pugnō,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*fight.*
vastō,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*lay waste, devastate.*
vexō,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*disturb, harass.*
vŏcō,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*call.*

Notes and Questions.

[1] The Principal Parts (*49*) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies; these Parts should always be learned.

[2] Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like **āmō**. To form the Principal Parts let **ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm** take the place of final **ō** in the Present Indicative Active: e. g. **cūrō, cūrārĕ, cūrāvī, cūrātŭm.**

[3] See LN. XIII., NOTE 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice? On which Stem is each formed? Name the Infinitives of **dō, cūrō, jŭvō,** and **vastō.** What is the Ending of each Infinitive? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed? What is the Ending of each Participle? What is the Future Active Participle of **dō, nĕgō, pugnō**? What is the Present Participle of each? On which Stem is the Gerund formed? Form and decline the Gerund of **dō** and **cūrō.** What are the Endings of the Supine?

LESSON XVII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. **57**, 8, *e*: A. & S. **270**: B. **315**, *f*: B. & M. ***1148***: G. **527**: H. **550.**

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. **52**, 4, *b*: A. & S. **239**: B. **225**, RULE XVI.: B. & M. ***1136***: G. **526**, *second part*: H. **545.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dīcit Rōmānōs**[1] **oppĭdŭm**[2] **expugnārĕ,**[3] *he says* (*that*[4]) *the Romans*[4] *are storming*[4] *the town.*
2. **Dīcit Rōmānōs oppĭdŭm expugnāvissĕ,** *he says* (*that*) *the Romans have stormed the town;* or *he says* (*that*) *the Romans stormed the town.*

3. **Dīcĭt Rōmānōs oppĭdŭm expugnātūrōs**[5] **essĕ,** *he says (that) the Romans are about to storm the town;* or *he says (that) the Romans will storm the town.*

Notes on the Examples.

[1] See *53.* [2] See *34.*

[3] The whole expression **Rōmānōs oppĭdŭm expugnārĕ** is the Direct Object of **dīcĭt** (see *52*).

[4] Observe that the Infinitive **expugnārĕ** is translated by the Indicative *are storming;* the Subject Accusative **Rōmānōs,** by the Subject Nominative *the Romans;* and the Conjunction *that* is supplied.

[5] Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY.

Aeduī, ōrŭm, m.				*the Aedui.*
Ariovistŭs, ī, m.				*Ariovistus.*
dēmonstrŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**[1]	*show, declare.*
dīcĭt,				*he says.*
existĭmŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*think, suppose.*
nĕgŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*deny.*
nunciŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*announce.*
pŭtŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*think.*

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

1. Dīcĭt[2] Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexārĕ.[3] 2. Pŭtăt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexāvissĕ. 3. Nunciăt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexātūrōs essĕ. 4. Existĭmăt Ariovistŭm regnŭm in Galliā occŭpātūrŭm essĕ. 5. Tĭtŭs existĭmăt Ariovistŭm regnŭm ĭn Galliā occŭpāvissĕ. 6. Ariovistŭs nunciăt Germānōs agrŭm Helvētiŭm vastātūrōs essĕ. 7. Dīcĭt Rōmānōs frūmentŭm importārĕ. 8. Existĭmăt Helvētiōs frūmentŭm importātūrōs essĕ. 9. Dīcĭt Gallōs frūmentŭm Rōmānīs[4] dătūrōs essĕ. 10. Dīcĭt Aeduōs Rōmānīs[4] armă dătūrōs essĕ.

Write in Latin.

1. He says[2] (that[5]) the Sequani are about to harass the Helvetii. 2. He says (that) the Germans are laying waste

the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans will give corn to the Aeduï. 4. Titus thinks (that) the Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

[1] The verbs in this Vy. may have as Object an Infinitive with its Subject Accusative.

[2] Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before attempting to translate the sentences.

[3] *Form for parsing an Infinitive.* — **vexārĕ** is a Transitive (*26*) Verb; Principal Parts (*49*), *vexŏ, vexārĕ, vexāvī, vexātŭm;* Stems, VEXA (*28*), VEXĀV (*45*), VEXĀT (*50*); Infinitives of the Active Voice, *vexārĕ, vexāvissĕ, vexātūrŭs essĕ;* it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its Subject **Rōmānōs** is the Object of **dicĭt**; rule (see *52*).

[4] See *39*.

[5] Words in parentheses are not to be translated; see also Notes on the Examples, 4.

LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. — ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. 54, 6: A. & S. 247: B. 258, RULE XLIII.: B. & M. *873:* G. 403: H. 414, 4.

VOCABULARY.

anĭmŭs, ī, m.	*mind.*
concĭlĭŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*win, conciliate.*
confirmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*establish, encourage.*
intĕr, prep. w. acc.	*between, among.*
Nŏrēĭă, ae, f.	*Noreia.*
oppugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*attack, besiege, assault.*
proptĕr, prep. w. acc.	*on account of.*
Trēvĭrī, ōrum, m.	*the Treviri.*
verbŭm, ī, n.	*word.*

Pronounce; translate; analyze;[1] parse.

1. Intĕr[2] Sēquănos ĕt Helvētios. 2. Proptĕr[2] angustias. 3. Nŏrēiam oppugnāmŭs.[3] 4. Nŏrēiam oppugnābant. 5. Rōmāni Nŏrēiam oppugnāvērunt.[4] 6. Trēvĭri Nŏrēiam oppugnābunt. 7. Dīcĭt Trēvĭros[5] Nŏrēiam oppugnātūros[6] essĕ.[7] 8. Nŏrēiam oppugnātĭs. 9. Nŏrēiam oppugnātĕ.[8] 10. Divitiăcus Gallōrum anĭmos verbis[9] confirmāvĭt. 11. Divitiăcus Gallōrum anĭmos verbis confirmābĭt. 12. Tĭtus pŭtăt Divitiăcum Gallōrum anĭmos verbis confirmātūrŭm essĕ. 13. Cassius regnum concĭlĭāvĭt. 14. Cassius regnum cōpiis concĭlĭābăt. 15. Cassius regnum cōpiis Divitiăco[10] conciliābĭt. 16. Nĕgăt Cassium regnum cōpiis Divitiăco concĭlĭātūrŭm essĕ. 17. Tĭtus Divitiăco[10] fīliam in mātrĭmōnium[11] dĕdĭt.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. XIII., NOTE 1. [2] See LN. XIII., NOTE 5.

[3] *Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood.* — **oppugnāmus** is a Transitive (*26*) Verb; Principal Parts (*49*), *oppugnŏ, oppugnārĕ, oppugnāvī, oppugnātŭm;* it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic vowel is **ā**; Stems, OPPUGNA, OPPUGNĀV, OPPUGNĀT; Synopsis (LN. XIV., NOTE 1), *oppugnŏ, oppugnābăm, oppugnābŏ, oppugnāvī, oppugnāvĕrăm, oppugnāvĕro;* conjugated, *oppugnŏ, oppugnās, oppugnăt, oppugnāmŭs, oppugnātĭs, oppugnant;* it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (**nos**, *we*) understood; rule (*33*).

[4] What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (*43*)

[5] See *53*. [6] See LN. XVII., Notes on the Examples, 5.

[7] See *52*. In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated? See LN. XVII., Example 3.

[8] See *47*. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the Present *Indicative*?

[9] **verbis**, *with words*, or *by means of words;* it is a modifier (*38*) of **confirmāvĭt**.

[10] See *39*. [11] See *19*.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS.

55. Stem and Declension. A. & G. **5**, 2; **8**, 1, *a*: A. & S. **38**; **40**, 10: B. **36**; **121**: B. & M. ***44–47***: G. **16**; **25**; **26**: H. **46 – 47**, *including fine print.*

56. A. & G. **11**, II., *a – d*, *w. declension of* **consŭl, nōmĕn, hŏnŏr, leō, pătĕr, virgŏ, ŏpŭs**: A. & S. **56**, II., REMARKS 1 – 3; **57**, *declension of* **hŏnŏr, sermŏ, pătĕr, carmĕn**: B. **130**; **135**, *w declension of* **consŭl, virgŏ, leō, nōmĕn, ămŏr, pătĕr**: B. & M. ***73–77***; ***90–97***, *including the Paradigms*: G. **36 – 39**; **40**; **42**; **43**; **44**; **46**; **47**: H. **55**; **56**; **57**, Case-Endings; **60**, *Paradigms*, 1, 3, 4.

VOCABULARY.

accūso, āre, āvi, ātum,	*accuse, censure.*
Caesăr, Caesărĭs, m.	*Caesar.*
consŭl, consŭlĭs, m.	*consul.*
citrā, prep. w. acc.	*this side of.*
flūmĕn, flūmĭnĭs, n.	*river.*
frātĕr, frātrĭs, m.	*brother.*
hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs, m.	*honor.*
mātĕr, mātrĭs, f.	*mother.*
pătĕr, pătrĭs, m.	*father.*
Sēquănă, ae, m.	*the Seine.*
sŏrŏr, sŏrōrĭs, f.	*sister.*
uxŏr, uxōrĭs, f.	*wife.*

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun and give its Stem and Endings; parse the verbs.

1. A[1] flūmĭnĕ Rhŏdăno.[2] 2. E[1] flūmĭnĕ Rhŏdăno. 3. Ad flūmĕn Sēquănam. 4. Citrā flūmĕn Rhēnum. 5. Pătĕr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dat. 6. Mātĕr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dăbit. 7. Caesăr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dĕdit. 8. Tĭtus dīcĭt Caesărĕm sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dĕdisse. 9. Caesăr uxōrĕm accūsāvit. 10. Caesăr consŭl[2] Tĭtum lēgātum[2] accūsāvĕrat. 11. Nĕgat Caesărĕm consŭlĕm Tĭtum

lēgātum accūsāvisse. 12. Caesărĭs[3] uxōrĕm accūsābĭmus. 13. Pătrĕm et mātrĕm et frātrĕm accūsant.

Write in Latin.

1. To the river Rhone. 2. This side of the river Seine. 3. Across the river Rhine. 4. Caesar gives a sister in marriage. 5. Caesar has given to the consul a daughter in marriage. 6. He thinks (that) Caesar has given a daughter in marriage. 7. We shall accuse Caesar the consul. 8. Brothers accuse sisters.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. IV., Vy., and Ln. VIII., Note 4.

[2] See *25*. [3] See Ln. III., Notes 2 and 3.

How is the Stem of a noun found? What are the Case-Endings of the Third Declension? Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit? How does the Stem of **flūmĭnis** differ in form from the Nominative Singular?

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

57. A. & G. **11**, III., 1–3, *coarse print – including the Paradigms:* A. & S. **56**, I., Remarks 1–3; **57**, *declension of* **nox, ars, mīlĕs, lăpĭs, căpŭt, poēmă**: B. **130 - 134**, *including the Paradigms:* B. & M. *all of* ***86-88:*** G. **37; 39; 51; 54; 56; 57**: H. **28, 2; 33; 36**; *all of* **56–59**.

VOCABULARY.

atquĕ[1] *or* **ăc**,[1] conj.		*and.*
căpŭt,	**căpĭtis,** n.	*head.*
custōs,	**custōdis,** m.	*guard.*
Dumnŏrix,	**Dumnŏrĭgis,** m.	*Dumnorix.*
Jūra, ae, m.		*the Jura.*
mīlĕs,	**mīlĭtis,** m.	*soldier.*
mons,	**montis,** m.	*mountain.*

pars,	**partis,** f.	*part.*
princeps,	**principis,** m.	*chief.*
rādix,	**rādīcis,** f.	*root.*
rex,	**rēgis,** m.	*king.*
urbs,	**urbis,** f.	*city.*

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ad rēgĕm Germānōrum. 2. Ad princĭpĕm Galliae prōvinciae. 3. Ad montĕm[2] Jūram. 4. Sŭb[3] montĕ Jūrā. 5. Intĕr montĕm Jūram et flūmĕn Rhŏdănum. 6. Circŭm urbĕm Rōmam.[4] 7. In urbĕ Rōmā. 8. Proptĕr hŏnōrēs Caesărĭs. 9. In partēs Galliae. 10. Cŭm Dumnŏrĭgĕ fratrĕ Divitiăci. 11. Rex atquĕ ămīcus. 12. Sĭnĕ rēgĕ atquĕ sĭnĕ ămīcis. 13. Căpĭtă mīlĭtŭm. 14. Ad rādīcēs montĭs. 15. Cum princĭpĕ tōtīus Galliae. 16. Urbēs multae et magnae.[5]

Notes.

[1] **atquĕ** is used before vowels and consonants; **ac,** only before consonants.

[2] A. & G. **47** *a,* page 20: A. & S. **83,** II., 3: B. **137,** *a,* 1: B. & M. ***116; 119:*** G. **54,** REMARK: H. **65,** 2.

[3] See **sŭb,** in General Vocabulary at end of the book.

[4] Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.

[5] See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

58. Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing. A. & G. **52,** 2: A. & S. **230:** B. **216,** RULE VIII.: B. & M. ***715:*** G. **334:** H. **373.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesărĕm consŭlĕm creāvērunt,** *they elected Caesar consul.*
2. **Oppĭdum appellant Gĕnēvam,** *they call the town Geneva.*

VOCABULARY.

appellŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*name, call.*
cīvĭtās, cīvĭtātĭs, f.	*state.*
creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*elect, appoint.*
lēgātĭo, lēgātĭōnĭs, f.	*embassy.*
lex, lēgĭs, f.	*law.*
mors, mortĭs, f.	*death.*
pax, pācĭs, f.	*peace.*
post, prep. w. acc.	*after.*
proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm,	*nearest.*
Pȳrēnaeŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Pyrenean.*
sĕnātŏr, sĕnātōrĭs, m.	*senator.*
suŭs, ă, ŭm,	*his, their.*
virtūs, virtūtĭs, f.	*valor, virtue.*

Pronounce; translate; analyze;[1] parse.

1. Pŏpŭlus Caesărĕm[2] consŭlĕm[2] creāvĭt. 2. Ancum Marcium rēgĕm pŏpŭlus creāvit. 3. Nunciat Ancum Marcium rēgĕm pŏpŭlum[3] creāvisse.[4] 4. Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus sĕnātōrēs pătrēs appellat. 5. Rōmāni suam[5] urbĕm Rōmam appellāvērunt. 6. Dumnŏrix, frātĕr[6] Divitiăci,[7] regnum in suā[5] cīvĭtātĕ occŭpāvit. 7. Helvētii cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbŭs pācĕm et ămīcĭtiam confirmant. 8. Caesăr oppĭdum virtūtĕ[8] suōrum mīlĭtŭm expugnāvit. 9. Ex oppĭdo Gĕnēvā[6] pons[11] ad Helvētios pertĭnet (*extends*). 10. Aquītāniă ā Garumnā flūmĭnĕ ad Pȳrēnaeos[9] montes pertĭnet. 11. Lēgātiōnĭs princĭpĕm Dumnorĭgĕm creāvērunt. 12. Belgae et Galli linguā[10] et lēgĭbŭs[10] differunt (*differ*). 13. Post mortĕm Caesărĭs.

Write in Latin.

1. After the death of Dumnorix. 2. After the death of his brother Divitiacus. 3. The Romans elected the man consul. 4. The Romans call their city Rome. 5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 6. He says that the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power in his state. 8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor.[8]

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. XIII., Note 1.
[2] See *58* and Examples.
[3] See *53*.
[4] See Ln. XVII., Note 3.
[5] When **suŭs** refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to **Rōmāni**, render it *their:* when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 6 it refers to **Dumnŏrix**, render it *his, her,* or *its.* It generally refers to the subject of its clause.
[6] See *25*.
[7] See *40*.
[8] See *54*.
[9] See General Vocabulary.
[10] See Ln. I., Note 5.
[11] **pons, pontis,** m. *bridge.*

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

59. A. & G. *Review* **11,** II., *a–d,* III., 1–3, *including all Paradigms under these references:* A. & S. **57,** **ŏpŭs** *and the declensions already learned:* B. **136**: B. & M. *all the Paradigms under* ***88–97,*** III.: G. **48–50**: H. *all of* **61.**

60. Rules of Gender. A. & G. **11,** IV., 1, *a–c*: A. & S. **58; 59; 62; 66**: B. **140**: B. & M. ***152; 159; 168:*** G. **40; 44; 47; 50; 57; 61,** 1, 2: H. **99; 105; 111.**

VOCABULARY.

corpŭs,	**corpŏrĭs,** n.	*body.*
crūs,	**crūrĭs,** n.	*leg.*
flōs,	**flōrĭs,** m.	*flower.*
frīgus,	**frīgŏrĭs,** n.	*cold, frost.*
fūnŭs,	**fūnĕrĭs,** n.	*funeral procession.*
gĕnŭs,	**gĕnĕrĭs,** n.	*kind.*
jūs,	**jūrĭs,** n.	*right, law.*
mōs,	**mōrĭs,** m.	*custom, manner.*
ŏnŭs,	**ŏnĕrĭs,** n.	*load, burden.*
ŏpŭs,	**ŏpĕrĭs,** n.	*work.*
scĕlŭs,	**scĕlĕrĭs,** n.	*crime, guilt.*
tempŭs,	**tempŏrĭs,** n.	*time.*
vulnŭs,	**vulnĕrĭs,** n.	*wound.*

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender.[1]

1. Jūs[2] belli; jūrā pŏpŭli Rōmāni. 2. Gĕnŭs proeli;[3] multa gĕnĕrā fūnĕrŭm. 3. Tempŏrĕ[4] pătrŭm; tempŏrā ĕt mōrēs. 4. Vulnĕrā mīlĭtŭm. 5. Flōrēs pulchri.[5] 6. Propter frīgŏrā. 7. In[6] rĕlĭquum tempŭs. 8. Mōrĕ ĕt exemplō pŏpŭli Rōmāni. 9. Mīlĭtēs multā vulnĕrā ąccēpērunt (*have received*). 10. Scĕlĕrā virōrum sunt (*are*) multa. 11. Crūrā ĕqui sunt magna. 12. Corpŭs vĭri est (*is*) parvum. 13. Gĕnĕrā flōrŭm sunt multa. 14. Nullum[7] ŏnŭs aliud. 15. Nulla ŏnĕrā alia. 16. Onĕrā multa et magna. 17. Facta[9] māla[8] scĕlĕrā[9] appellāmus. 18. Rex jūrā et mōrēs vĭris[10] dăbăt.[11] 19. Multa gĕnĕrā frūmenti importābĭmus. 20. Dīcit Rōmānos multa gĕnĕrā frūmenti importāre.[12]

Notes and Questions.

[1] All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce; translate," is given or not.

[2] Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form? What is the Plural Ending of these cases?

[3] See *17*. [4] See LN. I., NOTE 5.

[5] How does **flōrēs pulchri** differ from **pulchri flōrēs**? (LN. VI., NOTE 2.)

[6] **In**, *for*.

[7] Name the adjectives with Genitive in **ĭŭs** and Dative in **ī**. (*24*)

[8] **māla** modifies **facta**. [9] See *58*.

[10] See *39*.

[11] What does the Imperfect Tense denote? (*36*)

[12] See LN. XVII.

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

61. A. & G. **11**, I., 1, 2, *and the Paradigms on page* 18 : A. & S. **57**, *declension of* **turrĭs, rūpēs, sēdīlē, ănīmăl** : B. **130**; **137**, *a*, *b*, 1–2, REMARK : B. & M. *all of* ***98,*** I., and ***99,*** II.; ***100:*** G. **58–61** : H. **62–65**, 1–3.

VOCABULARY.

Allobrŏgēs, Allobrŏgŭm, m.	*the Allobroges.*
ănīmăl, ănīmālĭs, n.	*animal.*
collĭs, collĭs, m.	*hill.*
crĕmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*burn.*
fīnĭs, fīnĭs, m.	*limit;* pl. *territory.*
hostĭs, hostĭs, m. *and* f.	*enemy.*
ignĭs, ignĭs, m.	*fire.*
mărĕ, mărĭs, n.	*sea.*
nāvĭs, nāvĭs, f.	*ship.*
nūbēs, nūbĭs, f.	*cloud.*
quĕ,[1] conj.	*and.*
rūpēs, rūpĭs, f.	*rock, cliff.*
terrā, ae, f.	*earth, land.*
turrĭs, turrĭs, f.	*tower.*

[1] **quĕ** is appended to the second of the connected words: e. g. **rūpēs turrisquĕ,** *cliff and tower.* Words thus appended are called *enclitics.*

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. In nāvĭbŭs. 2. In[1] collĕ et in montĕ. 3. In hostĭŭm nŭmĕrō. 4. Gĕnĕrā ănīmālĭŭm multa sunt. 5. Terrā mărīquĕ.[2] 6. Vīros ignī[3] crĕmant. 7. Allobrŏgēs vīrum ignī crĕmant. 8. Nunciat Allobrŏgēs[4] vīrum ignī crĕmāre. 9. In turrĭbŭs et in[1] rūpĭbus. 10. In nūbĭbŭs. 11. Intĕr fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrŏgŭm[5] Rhŏdănus fluit (*flows*). 12. Helvētii pĕr angustias et fīnēs Sēquănōrum suas[6] cōpias trāduxĕrant (*had led across*). 13. Mons Jūra fīnēs Sēquănōrum ăb Helvētiis dīvĭdit (*separates*).

Write in Latin.

1. On[1] the cliffs. 2. Out of the ships. 3. Through the territory of the Aedui. 4. Into the territory of the Sequani. 5. On the hills and mountains. 6. In the number of animals. 7. Men will burn the tower with fire.[3] 8. He says that men will burn the tower with fire. 9. Many kinds of towers. 10. The dangers of land and sea.

Notes and Questions.

[1] **in**, *on*.

[2] A. & G. **43**, 3, *a*: A. & S. **198**, II., REMARK (*a.*), (*b.*): B. **330**, *a*: G. **477**; **478**; **479**: H. **587**, I., 2.

[3] See ***54***.

[4] See ***53***.

[5] What does **Allobrŏgŭm** modify?

[6] See LN. XXI., NOTE 5. To what noun does it refer?

[7] What is the rule of gender for **mărĕ, rūpēs, milĕs, nāvis, tempŭs, hŏnŏr, civĭtās, lēgātio**? (***60***) See H. **100**, 3.

LESSON XXIV.

THE VERB SUM.

62. Learn the entire conjugation of **sum**. A. & G. **29**: A. & S. **153**: B. **71**: B. & M. ***277***: G. **112**: H. **204**.

63. What is an Irregular Verb? A. & G. **37**: A. & S. **178**: B. & M. ***410***: H. **289**. What are the Stems of **sŭm**? What are the Personal Endings? What are the Principal Parts of **sum**? Where are the following forms made: **ĕrăm, est, fuērunt, sīmŭs, ĕrunt, fuĕrant, estŏ, fuissĕm, fuĕrŏ**?

LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. **46**, 2; **47**, REMARK: A. & S. **210**, REMARK 1, (*a.*): B. **206**, RULE II.: B. & M. ***666***: G. **202**: H. **362**; **438**, 2.

VOCABULARY.

Ărăr, Ărărĭs, acc. **Ărărĭm**, m.	*the Saône*, pronounced *Sōne*.
Divĭco, ōnis, m.	*Divico*.
extrēmŭs, ă, ŭm,	*furthermost*.
hŏmŏ,[1] **ĭnĭs**, m. *and* f.	*man*.
ĭmpĕrātŏr, ōrĭs, m.	*commander-in-chief, general*.

lĕgio, ōnis, f.	*legion.*
mŭlĭĕr, ĕris, f.	*woman.*
obsĕs, ĭdis, m. *and* f.	*hostage.*
pŏtestās, ātis, f.	*power.*
testis, is, m. *and* f.	*witness.*

Pronounce; translate; analyze; parse.

1. Oppĭdum est magnum.[2] 2. Anĭmăl fuĭt parvum. 3. Pŭtat suam sŏrōrĕm essĕ pulchram.[3] 4. Hŏmĭnēs fuērunt aegri. 5. Sēquāni sōli ĕrunt lībĕri. 6. Cæsăr ĕrăt impĕrātŏr. 7. Mŭlĭĕr est bŏna. 8. Dīcĭt Sēquānos sōlos fūtūros essĕ lībĕros. 9. Estĕ,[4] O puĕri, bōni. 10. Ariovistus fuĭt rex Germānōrum. 11. Divĭco dux Helvētiōrum fuĕrăt. 12. Legātiōnis Divĭco princeps fuĭt. 13. Extrēmum oppĭdum Allobrŏgum est Gĕnēvă. 14. Pōpŭlus[5] Rōmānus est testis. 15. Erăt in Galliă lĕgio ūnă. 16. Pars cĭtrā flūmĕn Arărĭm[6] rĕlĭquă est. 17. Flūmĕn[7] est Arăr quŏd (*which*) pĕr fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquānōrum in Rhŏdănum influĭt (*flows*). 18. Mons Jūră[8] est inter Sēquānos ĕt Helvētios. 19. Propter frīgŏra frūmenta[9] in agris mātūra non ĕrant. 20. Aedui Sēquānis[10] obsĭdes dĕdērunt.

Notes and Questions.

[1] **hŏmo** means a *human being*, man or woman; **vĭr** means *man, hero*, never woman.

[2] **oppĭdum est magnum** may be rendered *the town is large; it is a large town;* or *there is a large town:* the word *there* as used in the last rendering has no equivalent in Latin.

[3] See Ln. XVII. and Examples. [4] See **47.**

[5] **pŏpŭlus** takes a *Singular verb; people*, its English equivalent, usually takes a *Plural verb.*

[6] What is the rule of gender for **Arăr**? (**6**)

[7] See **64.** [8] See **25.**

[9] Translate **frūmenta** as if it were Singular.

[10] See **39.**

LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. **57**, 2, *a*–*b*: A. & S. **260**: B. **293**: B. & M. ***1161***: G. **247–249**: H. **483**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī Liscus sit dux,** *if Liscus* SHOULD BE *leader;* or, *if Liscus* BE *leader.*
2. **Sī Liscus esset dux,** *if Liscus* WERE *leader.*
3. **Sī Liscus fuĕrit dux,** *if Liscus* SHOULD HAVE BEEN *leader;* or, *if Liscus* SHOULD BE *leader.*
4. **Sī Liscus fuisset dux,** *if Liscus* HAD BEEN *leader.*
5. **Sīmus dŭcēs,** LET US BE *leaders.*

VOCABULARY.

cŭpĭdĭtās, ātis, f.	*desire.*
dux, dŭcis, m. *and* f.	*leader, guide.*
Liscŭs, ī, m.	*Liscus.*
multĭtūdo, ĭnis, f.	*multitude.*
nōn, adv.	*not.*
ōrātio, ōnis, f.	*speech, oration.*
sī, conj.	*if.*
vectīgăl, ālis, n.	*tax, revenue.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis[1] of each Subjunctive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Sī[2] Caesar sit[3] consul.[4] 2. Sī Caesar esset consul. 3. Sī Caesar fuĕrit consul. 4. Sī Caesar fuisset consul. 5. Sīmus consŭles. 6. Sī frūmentum esset mātūrum. 7. Sī propter frīgŏra frūmentum in agris sit nōn[5] mātūrum. 8. Sī vectīgālia fuissent magna. 9. Sī vectīgālia essent parva. 10. Sī Divĭco princeps lēgātiōnis fuisset. 11. Sī nōn[5] bŏnus sis. 12. Sī ōrātiōnes Caesăris fuissent multae. 13. Sī multĭtūdo mīlĭtum sit magna. 14. Sī cŭpĭdĭtās regni esset magna.

15. Sī rex fuisses. 16. Mīlĭtes sīmus. 17. Sī mīles essem. 18. Sī sis impĕrātor.

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king. 2. If Ariovistus were king. 3. If Ariovistus had been king. 4. Let us be kings. 5. Let us be good. 6. If the mountain were large. 7. If the boys had been bad. 8. If we were not free. 9. If the furthermost town had been Geneva. 10. If the corn had not been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus were leader of the Helvetii. 12. If the danger had been great.

Notes.

[1] A Synopsis of the Subjunctive includes the First Person Singular of each tense: e. g. **sim, essem, fuĕrim, fuissem.**

[2] **sī** is a *conditional conjunction;* the sentence which it introduces is a *conditional sentence.*

[3] Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the Subjunctive is rendered in the EXAMPLES.

[4] See ***64.***

[5] A. & G. **207**: A. & S. **190**, 2: B. **30**: B. & M. ***460***: G. **440**, 1, 2: H. **582.** What does **nŏn** modify?

LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF **SUM.** — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. Compounds of **sŭm.** A. & G. **29**, *a*, *b*, **prōsŭm**: A. & S. **154**, REM. 5 and 6: B. **109**, I., *a*: B. & M. ***279***; ***411***: G. **113**; **114**: H. **289**; **290**, I., III.

67. Dative with Compounds. A. & G. **51**, 2, *d*: A. & S. **224**: B. **242**, RULE XXX.: B. & M. ***326***: G. **346**: H. **386.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Pauci**[1] **sŭperfuērunt,** *few survived.*
2. **Dux suis mīlĭtĭbus** (***67***) **ădĕrat,** *the leader* WAS ASSISTING *his soldiers.*

3. **Caesar prōvinciae (67) praefuit,** *Caesar* RULED OVER *the province.*
4. **Sī Liscus multis[1] prōdesset,** *if Liscus* WERE USEFUL *to many.*
5. **Sī consĭlium dēfuisset,** *if counsel* HAD BEEN WANTING.
6. **Tītus lĕgiōni (67) praeĕrat,** *Titus* WAS IN COMMAND OF *the legion.*

VOCABULARY.

ăb-sŭm,	**ăb-essĕ,**	**ăb-fui,**	*be away, be absent, be distant.*
ăd-sŭm,	**ăd-essĕ,**	**ăf[2]-fui,**	*be present, assist.*
dē-sŭm,	**dē-essĕ,**	**dē-fui,**	*be wanting.*
hūmānĭtās, ātis, f.			*refinement, humanity.*
longissĭmē, adv.			*very far.*
pauci,[1] ae, a,			*few.*
prae-sŭm,	**prae-essĕ,**	**prae-fui,**	*be over, rule over, be in command of.*
prō-sŭm,	**prōd-essĕ,**	**prō-fui,**	*be for, be useful.*
sŭper-sŭm,	**sŭper-essĕ,**	**sŭper-fui,**	*be over, survive.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multi[1] sŭperfuērunt. 2. Multi[3] sŭpersŭmus. 3. Pauci sŭpĕrĕrĭmus. 4. Caesar suis mīlĭtĭbus[4] ădĕrit. 5. Sī Caesar suis mīlĭtĭbus nōn adsit.[5] 6. Consul urbi praeĕrat. 7. Lăbiēnus oppĭdo[6] Gĕnēvae[7] praeĕrit. 8. Consul lĕgiōni praeest. 9. Sī Caesar multis[1] prōfuisset. 10. Multis prōsīmus.[8] 11. Nōn deest consĭlium. 12. Consŭles[9] dēsŭmus. 13. Belgae a hūmānĭtāte prōvinciae[10] longissĭme[11] absunt. 14. Sī deus[12] adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many[1] will survive. 2. Few[3] (of us) survive. 3. The consul will assist his soldiers. 4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers. 5. Let[8] us assist the soldiers. 6. Labiēnus was in command of the legion. 7. If Labiēnus were[13] in command of the legion. 8. If we consuls[9] had been wanting.

Notes.

[1] **pauci** and **multi**, like the corresponding English words *few* and *many*, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. **Pauci** is rarely used in the Singular.

[2] Observe that in **ad-sum** the **d** of **ad** becomes **f** before **f**.

[3] **multi** modifies **nos** (*we*), the omitted subject of **sŭpersŭmus**; render, *many of us survive*.

[4] See **67** and Example 2; translate as if it were an Accusative.

[5] See Ln. XXVI., Example 1.

[6] See **67**.

[7] See **25**.

[8] See Ln. XXVI., Example 5.

[9] **consŭles** is an appositive to **nos** (*we*), the omitted subject of **dēsŭmus**.

[10] See **40**.

[11] See Ln. XXVI., Note 5.

[12] See **20**.

LESSON XXVIII.

CONJUGATION OF **POSSUM**. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. **Possŭm.** A. & G. **29**, *b*: A. & S. **154**, Rem. 7: B. **109**, I., *b*: B. & M. ***412***: G. **115**: H. **290**, II., *including fine print*.

69. ***Infinitive without Subject Accusative.*** A. & G. **57**, 8, *c*: A. & S. **271**: B. **315**, *c*: B. & M. ***1138***: G. **424**: H. **552**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Mīlĭtes pugnāre (69) possunt,** *the soldiers* ARE ABLE *to fight*; or *the soldiers* CAN *fight*.
2. **Mīlĭtes pugnāre pŏtĕrant,** *the soldiers* WERE ABLE *to fight*; or *the soldiers* COULD *fight*.
3. **Mīlĭtes pugnāre pŏtŭerunt,** *the soldiers* WILL BE ABLE *to fight*.
4. **Mīlĭtes pugnāre pŏtuērunt,** *the soldiers* HAVE BEEN ABLE *to fight*; or *the soldiers* COULD HAVE *fought*.
5. **Sī mīlĭtes pugnāre possint,** *if the soldiers* SHOULD BE ABLE *to fight*.
6. **Sī mīlĭtes pugnāre possent,** *if the soldiers* WERE ABLE *to fight*.

7. **Sī mīlĭtes pugnāre pŏtuissent,** *if the soldiers* HAD BEEN ABLE *to fight.*

8. **Dīcĭt mīlĭtes (53) pugnāre (69) potuissĕ (52),** *he says that the soldiers* WERE ABLE *to fight.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis[1] of each form of POSSŬM; parse the Infinitives.[2]

1. Consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtest.[3] 2. Consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtĕrăt. 3. Consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtĕrĭt. 4. Consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtuĭt. 5. Dīcit consŭlem[4] oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtuissĕ.[5] 6. Sī consul oppĭdum expugnāre possĭt. 7. Sī consul oppĭdum expugnāre possĕt. 8. Sī consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtuissĕt. 9. Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus Cassium[6] consŭlem[6] creāre non pŏtĕrĭt. 10. Tĭto[7] fīliam meam (*my*) in mātrĭmōnium dăre non possŭm. 11. Consŭli[8] adessĕ pŏtĕrĭs. 12. Mīlĭtes agros hostium vastāre pŏtĕrunt. 13. Amīcis prōdessĕ possŭmŭs. 14. Nēmo (*no one*) sīne virtūte bonus essĕ pŏtest.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. XIV., NOTE 1 and LN. XXVI., NOTE 1.

[2] See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

[3] Observe carefully how each tense of **possŭm** is translated in the EXAMPLES. What two words unite to form **possŭm**? Which part of **pŏtis** is used? What does the final **t** become before **s**? What becomes of **f** in the Perfect Tenses?

[4] See *53.*

[5] See *52.*

[6] See *58.*

[7] See *39.*

[8] See *67.*

LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO.

70. Learn the Subjunctive Active of ămŏ. A. & G. 28, 3, *a*, ACTIVE VOICE, *for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive;* 31:

A. & S. **155**: B. **72**; **74**, a; **75**: B. & M. **282**: G. **119**; **120**: H. **205**; **243**; **245**.

Observe that the *Stems* and *Personal Endings* are the same as those of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī urbem occŭpēmus,** *if* WE SHOULD OCCUPY *the city.*
2. **Sī urbem occŭpārēmus,** *if* WE OCCUPIED *the city.*
3. **Sī urbem occŭpāvĕrĭmus,** *if* WE SHOULD HAVE OCCUPIED *the city;* or *if* WE SHOULD OCCUPY *the city.*
4. **Sī urbem occŭpāvissēmus,** *if* WE HAD OCCUPIED *the city.*
5. **Ut**[1] **urbem occŭpēmus,** *that* WE MAY OCCUPY *the city.*
6. **Ut urbem occŭpārēmus,** *that* WE MIGHT OCCUPY *the city.*
7. **Urbem occŭpēmus,** LET US OCCUPY *the city.*

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Sī Sēquănī Helvētios jŭvent.[2] 2. Sī Rōmāni Germānos jŭvārent. 3. Sī rex Helvētios jūvĕrit. 4. Sī Aquītāni Sēquănos jūvissent. 5. Ut[1] consul Helvētios jŭvet. 6. Ut păter suos fīlios jŭvāret. 7. Allobrŏges jŭvēmus. 8. Pueros vŏcēmus. 9. Concĭlium Gallōrum convŏcēmus. 10. Sī Caesări[3] fīliam suam in mātrĭmōnium det. 11. Sī cum proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus[4] pācem et ămīcĭtiam confirmes. 12. Ut mīlĭtes circum Rōmam hiĕmārent. 13. Ut pŏpŭlus Ariovistum[5] rēgem[5] creāret. 14. Ut consul oppĭdum Gĕnēvam[6] occŭpāret. 15. Ut mīlĭtes Rōmāni agros Gallōrum vastent. 16. Ut suis cōpiis[7] regna concĭliāret.

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends. 2. If we loved (our) friends. 3. If we had loved (our) friends. 4. That we may harass the enemy. 5. That we might harass the enemy. 6. Let us love friends. 7. If you should import ripe corn. 8. If you had imported ripe corn. 9. Let us aid the boys. 10. Let us elect the man[5] senator.[5]

Notes and Questions.

[1] **ut** in this Lesson is a *final conjunction* and is equivalent to *that, in order that.*

[2] Imitate the Examples in translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (*65*). Define the Indicative Mood (*26*). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of **jŭvŏ**.

[3] See *39*.

[4] See *16*. Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

[5] See *58*.

[6] See *25*.

[7] **suis cōpiis,** *with his troops.* See *54*.

LESSON XXX.

REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of **ămŏ**.

71. Two Accusatives. A. & G. **52**, 2, *c*, *d*: A. & S. **231**: B. **217**, RULE IX.: B. & M. *734*: G. **333**: H. **374**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesărem sententiam rŏgāvit,** *he asked Caesar (his) opinion.*
2. **Caesar Aeduos frūmentum flāgĭtāvit,** *Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*
3. **Rex pŏpŭlum sermōnem cēlāvit,** *the king concealed the conversation from the people.*

VOCABULARY.

cēlŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*conceal.*
commeŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*go back and forth.*
exspectŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*await, expect.*
flāgĭtŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*demand.*
grăvĭtĕr, adv.				*severely.*
mercātŏr, ōris, m.				*trader, merchant.*
mĭnĭmē, adv.				*least, by no means.*
rŏgŏ,	**ārĕ,**	**āvī,**	**ātŭm,**	*ask.*

saepĕ, adv.	*often.*
sententĭă, ae, f.	*opinion.*
sermo, ōnis, m.	*discourse, conversation.*
vulnĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*wound.*

Analyze[1] and parse.

1. Lăbiēnus suos[2] mīlĭtes[3] exspectābat.[4] 2. Galli mercātōres exspectāvēre.[5] 3. Tĭtus nunciat Gallos mercātōres exspectāvisse.[6] 4. Mīlĭtes Sēquănos grăvĭter vulnāvērunt. 5. Caesar princĭpes Aeduōrum grăvĭter accūsat. 6. Dīcit Caesărem princĭpes Aeduōrum grăvĭter accūsāre. 7. Mercātōres ad[7] Belgas commeant.[7] 8. Mercātōres ăd Belgas nōn saepe commeant. 9. Mĭnĭme[8] ăd Belgas mercātōres saepe commeant. 10. Commeāte,[9] mercātōres, ăd Belgas. 11. Consul Germānos cōpias flāgĭtābit. 12. Consul Gallos frūmentum flāgĭtat. 13. Sī consul Aeduos cōpias flāgĭtet. 14. Caesar consŭlem sententiam rŏgābit. 15. Dīcit Caesărem consŭlem sententiam rŏgātūrum essĕ. 16. Tĭtum sermōnem nōn cēlābo. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem sermōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduos frūmentum flāgĭtēmus.[10]

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. XIII., NOTE 1. [2] See LN. VI., NOTE 1.
[3] See LN. IV., NOTE 1. [4] See LN. XVIII., NOTE 3.
[5] What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (*43*)
[6] See LN. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and NOTE 3.
[7] **ad — commeant**, *go-back-and-forth to*, may be rendered *visit.*
[8] **mĭnĭme** modifies **saepe.**
[9] See *47.* [10] See LN. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? What are the Endings of the Infinitives? Of the Participles? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem? Which of the Subjunctive? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem?

LESSON XXXI.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO.

72. Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice. A. & G. **23**, 3; **28**, 1, PASSIVE, 3, *a*: A. & S. **141**, 2; **147**, 3, *Passive:* B. **44**; **64**, *a*, PASSIVE: B. & M. ***262***, 2; ***333***, PASSIVE VOICE: G. **205**; **111**: H. **195**, II.; **247**, PERSON, PASS., MEANING.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of **ămŏ.** A. & G. **31**: A. & S. **156**: B. **74**, b: B. & M. ***283***: G. **121**: H. **206.**

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses differ in form only in the Personal Endings: e. g. ămā-**mŭs**, *we love;* ămā-**mŭr**, *we* ARE *loved*: ămābĭ-**tĭs**, *you will love;* ămābĭ-**mĭnī**, *you will* BE *loved*. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has **bĭ**, and in the Passive, **bĕ**: e. g. ămā-**bĭ**-s, *you will love;* ămā-**bĕ**-rĭs or rĕ, *you will* BE *loved*. It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

appellŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*name, call.*
Castĭcŭs, ī, m.	*Casticus.*
nostĕr, nostră, nostrŭm,	*our.*
occultŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*hide, conceal.*

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements;[1] parse the nouns.

1. Oppĭda expugnābuntŭr. 2. Nostri agri vastābuntŭr. 3. Hŏmo igni[2] crĕmābĭtŭr. 4. Concĭlium Gallōrum convŏcābātŭr. 5. Nostrā linguā[3] Galli[4] appellantŭr. 6. Ariovistus rex[4] atque amīcus appellābātŭr. 7. Lucius Cassius consul[5] ămīcus[4] appellābĭtŭr. 8. Rex[4] appellābĕrĭs. 9. Divitiăcus frāter[5] Dumnŏrĭgis ămīcus[4] pŏpŭli Rōmāni appellābātŭr. 10. Păter Castĭci pŏpŭli Rōmāni ămīcus appellābātŭr. 11. In tantā multĭtūdĭne fŭga occultātŭr. 12. Orātiōne[6] Lisci Dumnŏrix Divitiăci frāter dēsignātŭr. 13. Dumnŏrix ab Aeduis[6] accūsābātŭr. 14. A Caesăre[6] accūsābĭmĭnī.

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

[1] See LN. X., NOTE 4, and LN. XII., NOTE 1.

[2] See *54*.

[3] See *54* and LN. I., NOTE 5.

[4] See *64*.

[5] See *25*.

[6] With verbs in the Passive Voice *the agent*, i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by *the Ablative with* **ā, ăb**; *the instrument*, i. e. the thing *by means of which* or *with which* anything is done, by *the Ablative without* a preposition: e. g. *He is overcome* BY THE SOLDIER, **a mīlĭte sŭpĕrātŭr**; *he is overcome* BY *the soldier's* WEAPONS, **tēlis mīlĭtis sŭpĕrātŭr.**

LESSON XXXII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO** (*continued*).

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of **ămō**. A. & G. **23**, 2, *b*; **31**: A. & S. **156**: B. **76**: B. & M. ***281***, 6, 4; ***283***: G. **122**: H. **206.**

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, f.	*citadel.*
comportō, āre, āvī, ātŭm,	*collect.*
ēnuncĭō, āre, āvī, ātŭm,	*divulge, report.*
ĕquĕs, ĭtis, m.	*horseman, cavalryman.*
praetŏr, ōris, m.	*praetor.*

Conjugate and give a Synopsis[1] of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduis[2] comportātum[3] est. 2. Magna cōpia frūmenti ab Aeduis comportātă ĕrat. 3. Obsĭdes Helvētiis[4] dăti[3] ĕrant. 4. Multi obsĭdes Helvētiis ā Sēquănis dăti ĕrant. 5. Nullae[5] arces expugnātae[3] sunt. 6. Nostra consĭlia[3] hostĭbus[4] ēnunciāta sunt. 7. Nostra consĭlia hostĭbus ab Aeduis ēnunciāta ĕrant. 8. Caesar ā Rōmānis praetor[6] creātus[3] est. 9. Praetōres[6] creāti ĕrīmus. 10. Nostri agri vastāti sunt. 11. Nostra oppĭda expugnāta sunt. 12. Tantă multĭtūdo ĕquĭtum sŭpĕrāta[3] est. 13. In tantā multĭtūdĭne ĕquĭtum nostra fŭga occultata est. 14. Cōpiae Caesăris ab Germānis ūno proelio[7] sŭpĕrātae sunt. 15. Equĭtes ā Caesăre grăvĭter[8] accūsāti sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected. 2. The citadels will have been stormed. 3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.[2] 4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls[4] by the Germans. 5. Cassius had been elected praetor.[6] 6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome. 7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.[7] 8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans. 9. We have been severely[8] censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. XIV., Note 1. [2] See Ln. XXXI., Note 6.

[3] Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (*64*), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

[4] See *39*. [5] See *24*.

[6] See *64*. What was a praetor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

[7] **ūno proelio**, *in a single battle*. See *54*.

[8] See Ln. XXVI., Note 5.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of **ămŏ.** A. & G. **28,** 1, *c*, and 3, *b*; **31**: A. & S. **156**: B. **64,** *b*; **65**; **66**; **74,** b; **76**: B. & M. ***283***: G. **121**; **122**: H. **247,** 3; **248**; **206.**

Conjugate the Imperatives; name the Stem and Ending of each verb; parse the Infinitives and Nouns.

1. Accūsārĕ, accūsāmĭnī.[1] 2. Accūsātŏr, accūsantŏr. 3. Jŭvārĕ, jŭvātŏr. 4. Vŏcāmĭnī, vŏcantŏr. 5. Dīcit suum frātrem creātŭm essĕ.[2] 6. Dīcit frātrem Divitiăci dēsignātŭm essĕ. 7. Dīcit montem ā Lăbiēno occŭpārī. 8. Nĕgăt[3] nostrōs agrōs vastātōs essĕ. 9. Nĕgăt cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus pācem confirmātăm essĕ. 10. Dīcit regnum ĭn cīvĭtāte suā occŭpātŭm essĕ. 11. Nunciăt Caesărem creātŭm essĕ consŭlem. 12. Nunciăt Cassium praetōrem creātŭm essĕ. 13. Dīcit Ariovistum ā Rōmānis rēgem appellātum essĕ.

Notes and Questions.

[1] How is the Imperative used? (***47***)

[2] **creātum essĕ,** *has been elected,* or *was elected.* See LN. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

[3] **nĕgăt,** *he says not;* lit. *he denies:* HE SAYS *our fields have* NOT *been laid waste.*

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed? Of the Indicative Passive? The Imperative Active and Passive? The Infinitives Active and Passive? The Participles Active and Passive?

How many Participles has a transitive verb? A. & G. **23,** 1, *c*: A. & S. **148,** 1, (2.): B. **54**; **55**: B. & M. ***269***: H. **196,** II., 4, *fine print.*

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO** (*continued*).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of **ămŏ**. A. & G. **31**: A. & S. **156**: B. **74, b**; **76**: B. & M. ***283***: G. **121**; **122**: H. **206**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī hŏmo crĕmētŭr,** *if the man* SHOULD BE BURNED.
2. **Sī hŏmo crĕmārētŭr,** *if the man* WERE BEING BURNED.
3. **Sī hŏmo crĕmātŭs sĭt,** *if the man* SHOULD HAVE BEEN BURNED; or *if the man* SHOULD BE BURNED.
4. **Sī hŏmo crĕmātŭs essĕt,** *if the man* HAD BEEN BURNED; or *if the man* WERE BURNED.
5. **Sī sententiam rŏgētŭr,** *if* HE SHOULD BE ASKED (*his*) *opinion.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Sī Caesar sententiam[1] rŏgātŭs essĕt. 2. Sī sententiam rŏgātŭs sĭm. 3. Si sententiam rŏgārĕrĭs. 4. Sī crĕmātī essēmŭs. 5. Sī Ariovistus rex[2] creātŭs essĕt. 6. Sī mīles vulnĕrētŭr. 7. Sī non vulnĕrātŭs essēs. 8. Sī Ariovistus amīcus pŏpŭli Rōmāni appellārētŭr. 9. Sī obsĭdes Rōmānis[3] ā Gallis[4] nōn dentŭr. 10. Sī obsĭdes Germānis ăb Helvētiis nōn dătī essent. 11. Sī cōpia frūmenti importētŭr. 12. Sī cōpia frūmenti nōn importātă essĕt. 13. Sī Divitiăcus ā pŏpŭlo Rōmāno rex appellātŭs essĕt. 14. Sī rex atque ămīcus ā Helvētiis appellārērĭs. 15. Sī sententiam rŏgātī essēmus. 16. Sī sententiam rŏgātī sītĭs. 17. Sī rēges creātī essētĭs. 18. Sī consŭles creātī essēmŭs.

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion. 2. If you were asked (your) opinion. 3. If you had been burned. 4. If Cassius had been elected consul. 5. If Cassius had not been called a friend of the Gauls. 6. If hostages should be given

to the Germans by the consul. 7. If the soldiers had not been wounded. 8. If we had not been wounded. 9. If an abundance of corn were being imported. 10. If you should be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See *71.* [2] See *64.*

[3] See *39.*

[4] Which prepositions are used with the Ablative? (*16*) How is *the agent* of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin? (Ln. XXXI., Note 6.) How is *the instrument* expressed? What is meant by *the agent?* By *the instrument?*

LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. ***Definition.*** A. & G. **35,** 1: A. & S. **142,** 4, (*a.*): B. **46:** B. & M. *304:* G. **211:** H. **195,** II., 2.

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation. A. & G. *page* **76, mīror:** A. & S. **161:** B. **93, cōnor; 55,** *second sentence:* B. & M. *306, second part; 307:* G. **141; 142:** H. **225; 226.**

VOCABULARY.

cōnor,	**ārī,**	**ātŭs sŭm,**[1]	*attempt, try.*
glōrior,	**ārī,**	**ātŭs sŭm,**	*glory, boast.*
hortor,	**ārī,**	**ātŭs sŭm,**	*exhort, urge.*
laetor,	**ārī,**	**ātŭs sŭm,**	*rejoice, exult.*
mīror,	**ārī,**	**ātŭs sŭm,**	*admire, wonder at.*
mŏror,	**ārī,**	**ātŭs sŭm,**	*tarry, delay.*
văgor,	**ārī,**	**ātŭs sŭm,**	*wander about.*
pŏpŭlor,	**ārī,**	**ātŭs sŭm,**	*ravage, lay waste.*

[1] The *principal parts* of a deponent verb are the *Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative;* e. g. **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātŭs sŭm.**

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis[1] of each verb.

1. Cōnāmur, cōnābāmur, cōnābĭmur. 2. Glōriātus sum, glōriātus ĕram, glōriātus ĕro. 3. Sī hortētur, sī hortārētur. 4. Sī hortātus sis, sī hortātus esses. 5. Laetāre, laetāmĭni, laetēmur.[2] 6. Dīcit Caesărem laetātum essĕ. 7. Mirāri[3] nōn possŭmus. 8. Văgāri[3] cōnēmur.[2] 9. Văgāri nōn pŏtĕrĭmus. 10. Caesar ăd[4] Rōmam mŏrātus est. 11. Helvētii agros Aeduōrum pŏpŭlābantur. 12. Ut văgārentur.[5]

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort. 2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried. 3. If he should tarry, if he tarried. 4. If he had tarried near Rome. 5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva. 6. They can[6] not rejoice. 7. They could[6] not rejoice. 8. Let us try[2] to rejoice.

Notes.

[1] A complete Synopsis of **cōnor**, for example, is as follows: *Indicative*, **cōnor, cōnābar, cōnābor, cōnātus sum, cōnātus ĕram, cōnātus ĕro**; *Subjunctive*, **cōner, cōnārer, cōnātus sim, cōnātus essem**; *Imperative*, **cōnāre, cōnātor**; *Infinitives*, **cōnāri, cōnātus essĕ, cōnātūrus essĕ**; *Participles*, **cōnans, cōnandus, cōnātus, cōnātūrus**; *Gerund*, **cōnandi**; *Supines*, **cōnātum, cōnātu.**

[2] See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7. [3] See *69*.

[4] **ăd** with the name of a town may often be rendered *near, in the vicinity of.*

[5] Render by the Imperfect Indicative.

[6] *Can* and *could* in these and similar sentences are equivalent to *are able, were able;* translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of **possŭm**, and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. **54**, 3 : A. & S. **247**: B. **257**, RULE XLII.: B. & M. ***873***: G. **407**: H. **414**, 2.

80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. **45**, 5, *a–f*, 6 : A. & S. **201**, 11–13 : B. **288**, *a–f*: B. & M. ***1407–1409***; ***1411***: G. **474**, 1–4 : H. **345**, II., III.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Puĕri ĕquis**[1] **(79) laetantur,** *boys rejoice* IN HORSES.
2. **Helvētii suā victōriā**[1] **(79) glōriābantur,** *the Helvetii were boasting* BECAUSE OF *their* VICTORY ; OR *the Helvetii were glorying* IN *their* VICTORY.
3. **Orgetŏrix Castĭcum hortātur ŭt regnum occŭpet,**[2] *Orgetorix uryes Casticus to seize the royal power.*
4. **Mīles nōn laetētur, sī vulnĕrētur,**[3] *the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.*
5. **Sī multi vulnĕrāti essent, nōn laetāti essēmus,** *if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.*
6. **Ariovistus fuit rex ĕt Caesar fuit consul,**[4] *Ariovistus was king and Caesar was consul.*

Analyze the sentences and parse.

1. Impĕrātor mīlĭtĭbus bŏnis laetātur. 2. Rōmāni suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur. 3. Sēquăni victōriā suā nōn glōriābuntur. 4. Nĕgat[5] Sēquănos victōriā glōriātūros essĕ. 5. Mīlĭtes hortābĭmur ŭt agros pŏpŭlentur. 6. Impĕrātor mīlĭtes suos hortātus est[6] ŭt agros Gallōrum pŏpŭlentur. 7. Dumnŏrĭgem hortābor ŭt regnum ĭn[7] suā cīvĭtāte occŭpet. 8. Sī igni[8] crĕmer, nōn laetēris. 9. Sī Cassius praetor[9] creātus esset, laetātus essem. 10. Sī Caesar sermōnem[10] mīlĭtes[10] cēlet, laeter. 11. Sī dux mīlĭtĭbus[11] adesse[12] possit, laetentur. 12. Hortēmur[13] Helvētios ŭt cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus pācem

ět ămīcĭtiam confirment. 13. Sī Caesar multos obsĭdes dĕdisset hostĭbus,[14] hostes laetāti essent. 14. Puer ĕrat mălus ĕ. puella ĕrat bŏna. 15. Consul ăbest ět praetor est aeger.[9]

Notes.

[1] In Examples 1 and 2 **ĕquis** and **victōriā** are the cause of the rejoicing and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative in accordance with the rule referred to in ***79.***

[2] Example 3 is a *complex sentence,* because it is made up of a *principal clause,* **Orgetŏrix Castĭcum hortātur,** and a *subordinate clause,* **ut regnum occŭpet.** Observe that **ut occŭpet** is rendered by the Infinitive *to seize;* lit. *that he may seize.*

[3] Example 4 is *a complex sentence; principal clause,* **miles non laetētur**; *subordinate clause,* **sī vulnĕrētur**: **sī** and **ŭt** are *subordinate conjunctions;* hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.

[4] Example 6 is a *compound sentence,* because it is made up of clauses which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called *coördinate clauses;* and the conjunctions which connect them, *coördinate conjunctions.*

[5] See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

[6] **hortātus est,** *has urged.*

[7] See LN. XIII., NOTE 5. Which is this?

[8] See ***54.***

[9] See ***64.***

[10] See ***71.***

[11] See ***67.***

[12] See ***69.***

[13] See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

[14] See ***39.***

LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. **16, 2, lĕvĭs, ācĕr,** *b, Case-Forms:* A. & S. **108; 109; 113, 1; 114, 1:** B. **156; 157, lĕvĭs:** B. & M. ***193,*** RULES 1, 2; ***196,*** II., **mītĭs; *198,* ācĕr:** G. **81; 82:** H. **152; 153; 154, tristĭs,** 3.

VOCABULARY.

ălăcĕr,[1] **crĭs, crĕ,**	*lively, eager.*
brĕvĭs,[2] **ĕ,**	*short, brief.*
cĕlĕr,[1] **cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ,**	*swift.*

difficilis,[2] ĕ,	*difficult, impracticable.*
ĕquestĕr,[1] **tris, trĕ,**	*of cavalry.*
făcilis,[2] ĕ,	*easy, practicable.*
fămĭlĭă, ae, f.	*household, family.*
fortis,[2] ĕ,	*brave, courageous, strong.*
ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕris, n.	*journey, route, march.*
jūdĭcĭŭm, ĭ, n.	*trial.*
omnis,[2] ĕ,	*all, every.*
tristis,[2] ĕ,	*sad.*

[1] Declined like **ăcĕr.**

[2] Declined like **lĕvis, mitis, făcilis, tristis.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Ex omnī[1] Galliā. 2. Cŭm omnĭbŭs cōpiīs. 3. Pĕr omnēs urbēs. 4. Pĕr tōtăm[2] urbĕm. 5. Equī sunt cĕlĕrēs.[3] 6. Nĕgăt[4] ĕquōs essĕ cĕlĕrēs. 7. Sī ĕquĭtēs fuissent cĕlĕrēs, rex laetātŭs essĕt.[5] 8. Tempŭs est brĕvĕ. 9. Helvētiī oppĭdă suă omniă incendunt (*burn*). 10. Fŭĭt proeliŭm ĕquestrĕ. 11. Dīcĭt fūtūrŭm essĕ proeliŭm ĕquestrĕ. 12. Sēquănī fuĕrunt tristes. 13. Ităr[12] ĕrăt difficĭlĕ. 14. Sī ĭtĕr sĭt făcĭlĕ, laetĕr.[6] 15. Pŭtŏ ĭtĕr essĕ făcĭlĕ. 16. Tĭtŭs Lăbiēnŭs lēgātŭs[7] suōs mīlĭtēs hortātŭr ŭt[9] fortēs sint.[9] 17. Orgĕtŏrix ăd jūdĭcĭŭm omnĕm suăm fămĭlĭam coēgĭt (*brought*). 18. Orgĕtŏrix Helvētiōs hortātŭs est[13] ŭt[10] dē fīnĭbŭs suīs cŭm omnĭbŭs cōpiīs exīrent.[10] 19. Vĭrīs[11] fortĭbŭs laetŏr.

Notes.

[1] See Ln. VI., Note 1.

[2] See *24.*

[3] See *64.*

[4] Se Ln. XXXIII., Note 3.

[5] See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

[6] See Ln. XXVI., Ex. 1 and Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

[7] See *25.*

[9] See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

[10] **ŭt — exirent,** *to go out.*

[11] See *79.*

[12] See A. & G. **11,** III. 4, *c*: A. & S. **57**: B. **138**: B. & M. *104.*

[13] **hortatus est,** *urged.*

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

82. A. & G. **16**, 3, *a*, *c*, 1, 2: A. & S. **111**; **113**, 2, 3; **114**: B. *all of* **158**: B. & M. *all of* ***193***: G. **83**; **84**; **85**, 1–3: H. *all of* **155–158**.

VOCABULARY.

audax, ācĭs,	*bold, audacious.*
condĭtio, ōnĭs, f.	*condition.*
contŭmēlĭă, ae, f.	*insult.*
dīvĕs, ĭtĭs,	*rich.*
fēlix, īcĭs,	*happy.*
flens, entĭs,	*weeping.*
implōrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*beseech, implore.*
injūrĭă, ae, f.	*injury.*
mŭlĭĕr, ĕrĭs, f.	*woman.*
ŏrĭens, entĭs,	*rising.*
pār, părĭs,	*equal.*
princeps, ĭpĭs,	*first, chief.*
rĕcens, entĭs,	*recent.*
sōl, sōlĭs, m.	*sun.*
spectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*look, front.*
vĕtŭs, ĕrĭs,	*old, ancient.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Vĕtĕrēs causae. 2. Vĕtŭs urbs[1] est Rōmă. 3. Mĕmŏrĭă vĕtĕrĭs contŭmēliae. 4. In părĕm condĭtiōnĕm servĭtūtĭs. 5. Rĕcentiŭm injūriārŭm mĕmŏrĭă. 6. Mŭlĭĕrēs ĕrant fēlīcēs. 7. Mŭlĭĕrēs flentēs Caesărĕm implōrābant. 8. Helvētiī flentes pācĕm pĕtiērunt (*sought*). 9. Hortēmŭr[2] mīlĭtēs ŭt[3] ălacrēs et audācēs sint.[3] 10. Belgae spectant ĭn[4] ŏrientĕm sōlĕm.[5] 11. Lēgātiōnĭs princĭpĕm[6] lŏcŭm[7] obtĭnēbant (*they held*). 12. Rōmānī dīvĭtēs fuērunt. 13. Germānī nōn părēs sunt nostrīs mīlĭtĭbŭs.[8]

Write in Latin.

1. There[9] will be a battle of cavalry. 2. Our soldiers are brave. 3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave. 4. Geneva is an old town. 5. All[10] are not happy. 6. Our leaders will be bold. 7. All cannot be[11] rich. 8. Weeping women will implore the consul. 9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalrymen.

Notes.

[1] See *64.* [2] See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

[3] How is the Subjunctive with **ut** to be translated after verbs signifying *ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge?* ANSW. By the Present Infinitive. See LN. XXXVI., EX. 3.

[4] **in**, *towards.*

[5] See B. **135**: B. & M. *121:* H. **60.**

[6] **princĭpēm** is here used as an adjective; it is often a noun.

[7] How is **lŏcŭs** declined in the Plural? See VY., LN. VIII.

[8] **militĭbŭs** is a *Dative.* [9] See LN. XXV., NOTE 2, *last part.*

[10] **omnes**, like the English *all*, is often used substantively.

[11] *cannot be*, **essĕ nōn possunt.**

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. **17**, 1, *a*: A. & S. **122**, 1–6; **124**, 1–3; **125**, 1: B. **161**; **162**; **163**, *a*: B. & M. *214–218:* G. **86**; **88**, 1: H. **160–162**; **163**, 1.

84. ***Declension of Comparatives.*** A. & G. **16**, 3, *b*: A. & S. **110**: B. **157**, REMARK: B. & M. *197:* G. **87**: H. **154**, 3, 4.

VOCABULARY.

altŭs, ă, ŭm,	*high, deep.*
fortūnă, ae, f.	*fortune.*
grăvis, ĕ,	*heavy, grievous.*
lātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*broad, wide.*

longē, adv.	*by far.*
mĭsĕr, mĭsĕrā, mĭsĕrŭm,	*wretched, pitiable.*
nōbĭlis, ĕ,	*well-known, noble.*
pŏtens, entis,	*powerful.*
quăm, adv.	*than.*
ūtĭlis, ĕ,	*useful.*

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Jūrā est mons[1] altissĭmŭs.[2] 2. Caesăr dīcĭt Jūrăm essĕ montĕm altissĭmŭm. 3. Rhēnŭs est flūmĕn lātissĭmŭm ĕt altissĭmŭm. 4. Hŏmĭnī[3] nōbĭlissĭmō āc[6] pŏtentissĭmō ădĕrăm. 5. Omnĭŭm[4] fortissĭmī sunt Belgae. 6. Apŭd Helvētiōs longē nōbĭlissĭmŭs ĕt ditissĭmŭs[10] fuĭt Orgētŏrix. 7. Pĕr trēs (*three*) pŏtentissĭmōs pŏpŭlōs tōtīŭs Galliae. 8. Nostrae fīliae pulcherrĭmae sunt. 9. Mīlĭtēs hortēmŭr ŭt fortiōrēs sint.[5] 10. Sī tempŭs fuissĕt brĕviŭs, nōn laetātŭs essĕm. 11. Mīlĭtēs fuērunt Caesărī ūtĭlissĭmī. 12. Dĭcĭt essĕ mĭsĕriōrĕm grăviōremquĕ[7] fortūnăm[8] Sēquănōrūm quăm[9] rĕlĭquōrŭm Gallōrŭm.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women. 3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhine is a very deep river. 8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

[1] What is the gender of **mons**? Of **Jūrā**?

[2] *Superlatives* may sometimes be rendered by the *positive* with *very*: e. g. **mons altissĭmŭs**, *a very high mountain.* They are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

[3] *67.* [4] See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 10.

[5] See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3. [6] See Ln. XX., Note 1.

[7] What is the difference in force of **ĕt, quĕ,** and **atquĕ**? See Ln. XXIII.,

NOTE 2. What are appended words called? See VY., LN. XXIII., NOTE on **quĕ**, last part.

[8] **fortūnăm** is subject of **essĕ**.

[9] When **quăm** signifying *than* is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation *that*: e. g. **quăm Rōmānōrŭm**, *than* THAT *of the Romans*.

[10] See General Vocabulary under **dīvĕs** and **dīs**.

LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

85. A. & G. **17**, 1, *b* – *e*, 2, 3, *a*: A. & S. **125**, 2 - 5; **126**, 1: B. **163**, *b* – *d*; **164**, *a*, *b*: B. & M. ***219*** – ***222***: G. **88**, 2 – 4; **89**, REMARKS 1, 2: H. **163**, 2, 3; **165**; **166**; **169**, 1, 2; **170**.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, ĭŭm, f.	*the Alps.*
cĭtĕrĭŏr, cĭtĕrĭŭs,	*hither.*
extrā, prep. w. acc.	*without, beyond.*
infĕrĭŏr, infĕrĭŭs,	*lower.*
prīmŭs, ă, ŭm,	*first.*
Sĕgūsiānī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Segusiani.*
Sēquănŭs, ă, ŭm,	*of the Sequani.*
sŭpĕrĭŏr, sŭpĕrĭŭs,	*higher, upper.*
ultĕrĭŏr, ultĕrĭŭs,	*farther.*

Translate and parse.

1. Mājŏr[1] multĭtūdo Germānōrum[2] Rhēnum transībăt (*was crossing*). 2. Carrōrum[2] maxĭmus nŭmĕrus. 3. Cŭm maxĭmo mīlĭtum[2] nŭmĕro. 4. Belgae pertĭnent (*extend*) ăd infĕrĭōrem partem flūmĭnis Rhēni. 5. Galli lŏca sŭpĕrĭōra occŭpant. 6. Lăbiēnus summum montem[3] occŭpāvit. 7. Summus mons ā Lăbiēno[4] occŭpātus est. 8. Nĕgat summum montem ā Lăbiēno occŭpātum essĕ. 9. Mīlĭtes hortābĭmur

ut summum montem occŭpent. 10. Sī Lăbiēnus summum montem occŭpet, Caesar sit[5] fēlīcissĭmus. 11. Iter pĕr prōvinciam est făcĭlius.[6] 12. Ager Sēquănus ĕrat optĭmus[7] tōtīus Galliae. 13. Caesar ĭn Galliam ultĕrĭōrem pĕr Alpes contendit (*hastens*). 14. Cĭtĕrĭōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppĭdum. 15. Segūsiāni sunt extrā prōvinciam prīmi.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of horses. 2. A larger number of cavalrymen. 3. To the upper part of the Rhone. 4. The soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain. 5. The top of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers. 6. The route through our province is most practicable. 7. I think (that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practicable. 8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

[1] In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be compared.

[2] Notice the different positions of the Genitive; what is the difference in force? See Ln. III., Note 3.

[3] **summum montem,** *the top of the mountain.*

[4] See Ln. XXXI., Note 6.

[5] **sit,** *would be.*

[6] Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like **făcĭlis.**

[7] **optĭmus,** sc. **ăger.**

LESSON XLI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

86. Dative with Adjectives. A. & G. **51, 6**: A. & S. **222, 3**: B. **245,** Rule XXXIII.: B. & M. ***860:*** G. **356**: H. **391.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Belgae sunt proxĭmī Germānīs,** *the Belgae are nearest* TO THE GERMANS.
2. **Castrīs ĭdōneŭs lŏcŭs est,** *the place is suitable* FOR A CAMP.
3. **Deō sĭmĭlis est,** *he is like* A GOD.

VOCABULARY.

aetās, ātĭs, f.	*age.*
ămīcŭs, ă, ŭm,	*friendly.*
commūnis, ĕ,	*common.*
ĭdōneŭs, ă, ŭm,	*fit, suitable.*
ĭnĭmīcŭs, ă, ŭm,	*unfriendly, hostile.*
pătrĭă, ae, f.	*native land, fatherland.*
pĕrīcŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm,	*dangerous.*
sĭmĭlis, ĕ,	*like, similar.*
sōlŭm, ī, n.	*ground, soil.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Aquĭtānī sunt proxĭmī prōvinciae. 2. Aquĭtānī sunt prŏpiōrēs prōvinciae quăm Itălĭae. 3. Gĕnēvă est oppĭdŭm proxĭmŭm Helvētiōrŭm fīnĭbŭs. 4. Extrēmŭm oppĭdŭm Allobrŏgŭm est proxĭmumquĕ Helvētiōrŭm fīnĭbŭs Gĕnēvă. 5. Castrīs nōn ĭdōneŭs omnĭs lŏcŭs est. 6. Nĕgăt castrīs ĭdōneŭm omnĕm lŏcŭm essĕ. 7. Sī castrīs ĭdōneŭs lŏcŭs sĭt, mīlĭtēs laetentŭr.[1] 8. Nōn ĕgŏ sŭm ĭdōneŭs armīs. 9. Sī ĕgŏ fuissĕm ĭdōneŭs armīs, laetātŭs essĕm. 10. Dumnŏrix Helvētiīs ĕrăt ămīcŭs. 11. Dux ĭnĭmīciŏr Dumnŏrĭgī fuĭt quăm Caesărī. 12. Mātrī puellă est sĭmĭlis. 13. Nōn omnĭs puĕr est sĭmĭlis pătrī. 14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis 15. Pătriae sōlŭm omnĭbŭs cārŭm est. 16. Pŏpŭlō Rōmānō pĕrīcŭlōsŭm est proeliŭm. 17. Omnī urbī lēgēs sunt ūtĭlēs. 18. Impĕrātŏr suōs mīlĭtēs hortātŭr ŭt fortēs sint[2] et urbī Rōmae ūtĭlēs.

Write in Latin.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province. 2. Ocelum was the furthermost town of the hither province and nearest to the Alps. 3. If the place had been suitable for a camp, we should have rejoiced.[3] 4. Let us urge the soldiers to be[2] useful to (their) fatherland. 5. The lieutenant was most friendly to the soldiers. 6. The daughter is more like (her) father than (her) mother. 7. I do[4] not think (that) the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

[1] See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4. What kind of a sentence is this? (*80*)
[2] See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.
[3] See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.
[4] See LN. X., NOTE 5.

LESSON XLII.

ADVERBS.

87. Definition. A. & G. **41**: A. & S. **190**, 2: B. **30**: B. & M. *460*: G. **15**, IV., 1: H. **303.**

88. Derivation. A. & G. **41**, 1, *a*, *b*: A. & S. **192**, II., 1, 2: B. **199**, *b*, *c*: B. & M. *591; 592; 595*: G. **90**, 1–4: H. **333**; **335**, 1, 2.

89. Classification. A. & G. **41**, 2, *a–e*: A. & S. **190**, 3; **191**, I.–III.: B. **175**, *a–f*, REMARK: B. & M. *461*, 1–6: H. **304**, I.–IV.

90. Comparison. A. & G. **17**, 4: A. & S. **194**, 1, 2, 4: B. **174**, *a–c*: B. & M. *462; 463*: G. **91**: H. **305.**

91. Syntax. A. & G. **45**, 3, *a*: A. & S. **277**, I.: B. **327**, RULE LXXIX.: B. & M. *996*: G. **440**, 2: H. **582.**

VOCABULARY.

ācrĭtĕr, adv.	*sharply, fiercely.*
audactĕr, adv.	*boldly, courageously.*
cĕlĕrĭtĕr, adv.	*quickly, immediately.*
făcĭlĕ, adv.	*easily, readily.*
fortĭtĕr, adv.	*bravely, valiantly.*
grăvĭtĕr, adv.	*heavily, severely.*
lĭbĕrē, adv.	*freely, unreservedly.*
quā, adv.	*where.*

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortĭtĕr[1] pugnāvērunt. 2. Sī mīlĭtēs fortiŭs pŭgnent, impĕrātŏr laetētŭr. 3. Rōmānī nōn ācriŭs pugnābunt quăm Gallī.[2] 4. Germānī Helvētiōs făcĭlĕ[3] sŭpĕrābunt. 5. Gallī ā Caesărĕ nōn făcillĭmē sŭpĕrātī sunt. 6. Nunciăt Gallōs ā Caesărĕ nōn făcillĭmē sŭpĕrātōs essĕ. 7. Caesăr Dumnŏrĭgĕm grăvissĭmē accūsāvĭt. 8. Caesăr cĕlĕrĭtĕr concĭlĭŭm dīmittĭt (*dismisses*). 9. Liscŭs dīcĭt lĭbĕrĭŭs[4] atquĕ[5] audāciŭs. 10. Quā[6] mĭnĭmă altĭtūdo flūmĭnĭs ĕrăt. 11. Jūmentōrŭm ĕt carrōrŭm quăm[7] maxĭmŭm nŭmĕrŭm coëmĕrĕ[8] (*to purchase*). 12. Hostēs quăm fortissĭmē pugnābant. 13. Helvētiī Rōmānīs[9] quăm ămīcissĭmī fuērunt. 14. Sōlŭm pătriae cīvī quăm cārissĭmŭm est.

Notes.

[1] *Form for parsing an adverb.* — **fortĭtĕr** is an adverb of manner (*89*); derived from the adjective **fortis** (*88*); compared **fortĭtĕr, fortiŭs, fortissĭmē** (*90*); of the positive degree and modifies **pugnāvērunt** (*91*).

[2] What is the construction of **Gallī**?

[3] A. & G. **41**, 1, *d*: A. & S. **192**, 4, (*b.*): B. **174**, *d*: B. & M. *596*: G. **90**, 4: H. **335**, 4, 1).

[4] **lĭbĕrē** has no Superlative.

[5] See Ln. XXIII., Note 2.

[6] As a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

[7] **quăm** modifying a Superlative *strengthens* it: e. g. **quăm maxĭmum**, *as large as possible*; **quăm fortissĭmē**, *as bravely as possible.*

[8] (··) is the mark of *Diaeresis;* when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be *separated* in pronunciation: e. g. **coëmere** has four syllables; **coemere** would have only three.

[9] See *86.*

LESSON XLIII.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. **32**: A. & S. **157**: B. **79**; **80**: B. & M. *288:* G. **123**; **124**: H. **207.** See *27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50 of this book.*

VOCABULARY.

mŏneŏ,[1]	**ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm,**	*advise.*
hăbeŏ,	**ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm,**	*have.*
prŏhĭbeŏ,	**ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm,**	*restrain, keep from.*

[1] Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like **mŏneŏ.** For the *principal parts* let **ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm** take the place of final **eŏ**: e. g. hăbeŏ, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, hăbĭtŭm.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis[1] of each verb; name its elements.

1. Mŏnēbātĭs, mŏnēbĭtĭs, mŏnuistĭs. 2. Sī mŏneāmŭs,[2] sī mŏnērēmŭs, sī mŏnuissēmŭs. 3. Mŏnē, mŏnētĕ, mŏnentŏ. 4. Mŏnens, mŏnĭtūrŭs. 5. Mŏnērĕ, mŏnuissĕ, mŏnĭtūrŭs essĕ. 6. Ut ĕquōs hăbeāmŭs.[2] 7. Ut rex urbēs multās ĕt[3] magnās hăbeăt. 8. Multă castră hăbēbĭmŭs. 9. Lēgātŭs multōs mīlĭtēs hăbuĕrĭt.[4] 10. Hăbētŏ, hăbētōtĕ.[5] 11. Hăbens, hăbĭtūrŭs. 12. Hăbērĕ, hăbuissĕ, hăbĭtūrŭs essĕ. 13. Sī Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ[6] prŏhĭbeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ prŏhĭbuissent. 15. Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ prŏhĭbeāmŭs.[7] 16. Itĭnĕrĕ Helvētĭōs prŏhĭbērĕ[8] cōnantŭr. 17. Itĭnĕrĕ hostēs prŏhĭbēbĭmŭs. 18. Mīlĭtēs ĭtĭnĕrĕ hŏstēs prŏhĭbērĕ cōnābuntŭr. 19. Sī ĭtĭnĕrĕ mīlĭtēs prŏhĭbuissēmŭs. 20. Legātī nostrōs vĭrōs mŏnuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had. 2. If you should have, if you had, if you had had. 3. Have ye, he shall have, they shall have. 4. To restrain, to have restrained, to be about to restrain. 5. If we should keep the soldiers from the town. 6. If we shall have kept the soldiers from the town. 7. Let us keep the enemy from the town. 8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. XXXV., NOTE 1. [2] See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLES.

[3] See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

[4] Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (*42*)

[5] Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (*47*)

[6] **ĭtĭnĕrĕ** is an *Ablative of Separation.* A. & G. **54, 1**: A. & S. **251**: B. **256**, RULE XLI.: B. & M. *916*: G. **388**: H. **425.**

[7] See LN. XXIX., EX. 7. [8] See *69.*

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? Of the Infinitives and Participles? How are the different Stems of a verb found? (*28, 45, 50*) What two uses has the Perfect Indicative? (*43*)

LESSON XLIV.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. Accusative of Time. A. & G. **52**, 4, *c*: A. & S. **236**: B. **220**, RULE XI.: B. & M. *950*: G. **337**: H. **378.** This answers the question, *How long?*

VOCABULARY.

dēleĕ,	**ērĕ,**	**ēvī,**	**ētŭm,**	*destroy.*
dŏceĕ,	**ērĕ,**	**uī,**	**doctŭm,**	*teach.*
jŭbeĕ,	**ērĕ,**	**jussī,**	**jussŭm,**	*command, order.*
măneĕ,	**ērĕ,**	**mansī,**	**mansŭm,**	*stay, remain.*

mŏveō, ērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm,	*move, remove.*
obtĭneō, ērĕ, uī, obtentŭm,	*hold, obtain.*
possessĭō, ōnis, f.	*possession.*
vīcŭs, ī, m.	*village.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Germāni multos vīcos dēlēvĕrant. 2. Aliud[1] ĭter hăbēbant nullum. 3. Quăm[2] plūrĭmas cīvĭtātes hăbēbant. 4. Allobrŏges trans Rhŏdănum vīcos possessiōnesquĕ[3] hăbēbant. 5. Puĕros[4] littĕras[4] dŏceāmus. 6. Dīcĭt mātrem[5] fīlias littĕras dŏcēre. 7. In Galliā ultĕrĭōre multos annos[6] mănēbĭmus. 8. Caesar sĕnātōrem hortātur ŭt[7] ĭn castris multos menses maneat.[7] 9. Regnum ĭn Sēquănis multos annos obtĭnuĕrat. 10. Divĭco lēgātiōnis lŏcum princĭpem obtĭnēbat. 11. Sī ĭmpĕrātor castra mŏveat, mīlĭtēs fortius[8] pugnent. 12. Castra[9] movēre[10] cĕlĕrius nōn pŏtuērunt.[11] 13. Itĭnĕrĕ[12] Helvētios prŏhĭbēre nōn pŏtĕrunt.[11] 14. Helvētii suis fīnĭbus Germānos prŏhĭbēbant. 15. Proxĭmum[13] ĭter ĭn ultĕrĭōrem Galliam pĕr Alpes est. 16. Sĕd ĭn summo jŭgo duas (*two*) lĕgiōnes,[14] quas (*which*) ĭn Galliā cĭtĕrĭōre proxĭme conscripsĕrat (*he had enlisted*), ĕt omnia auxĭlia[14] collŏcāri[15] jussit.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Which adjectives have their Genitive in **ĭŭs** and Dative in **ī**? (*24*)
[2] See Ln. XLII., Note 7.
[3] See Ln. XXIII., Vy., Note.
[4] See *71*.
[5] See *53*.
[6] See *93*.
[7] How is **ut — măneat** to be translated? See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.
[8] From what adjective is **fortĭter** derived?
[9] What does **castra** signify in the Singular?
[10] See *69*.
[11] How do **pŏtuērunt** and **pŏtĕrunt** differ from each other?
[12] See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.
[13] **proxĭmum**, *shortest*.
[14] **lĕgiōnes** and **auxĭlia** are subjects of **collŏcāri**. (*53*)
[15] **collŏcāri** (*to be stationed*) with its subjects is object of **jussit**. (*52*)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

94. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. **32**: A. & S. **157**: B. **79**; **80**: B. & M. ***289***: G. **125**; **126**: H. **208**.

See also ***73***, *a*, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

contĭneŏ, ērĕ, uī, contentŭm,	*hem in, bound.*
dĭtio, ōnis, f.	*dominion, power.*
ōceănŭs, ī, m.	*ocean.*
răpīnă, ae, f.	*plundering.*
servĭtus, ūtis, f.	*slavery.*
tĕneŏ, ērĕ, uī, tentŭm,	*hold, keep.*
undĭquĕ, adv.	*on all sides.*

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Una pars contĭnētur[1] Gărumnā[2] flūmĭne,[3] Oceăno, fīnĭbus Belgārum. 2. Undĭquĕ lŏci nātūrā[4] Helvētii contĭnentur. 3. Summus mons[5] ā Tĭto Lăbiēno tĕnēbātur. 4. Nunciat summum montem ā hostĭbus tentum essĕ. 5. Sī summus mons ā hostĭbus teneātur, nostri mīlĭtēs quăm acerrĭme[6] pugnent. 6. Aedui ĭn servĭtūte atquĕ ĭn dĭtiōne Germānōrum tenti sunt. 7. Caesar mĕmŏriā tĕnēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesăre răpīnis[7] prŏhĭbēbātur. 9. Summus mons ā hostĭbus tĕnēri nōn pŏtest.[8] 10. Galli tĕnēri ĭn servĭtūte nōn pŏtĕrant.[8] 11. Obsĭdes multos annos ĭn servĭtūte tĕnēbantur. 12. Sī multos annos ĭn servĭtūte tenti essēmus, nōn fēlīces fuissēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The top[5] of the mountain will be held by Caesar. 2. The top of the mountain could[8] not be held by Caesar. 3. He says (that) the top of the monntain was held by the Germans.

4. If Cassius should keep in memory. 5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country. 6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans. 7. They were held in slavery many years.[9]

Notes and Questions.

[1] Define the Passive Voice? (*72*) What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? Name the three Stems of **contĭneo**. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed?

[2] See *54*. [3] See *25*.

[4] **lŏci nātūrā**, *by the character of their country.*

[5] **summus mons**, *the top of the mountain;* lit., *the highest mountain.*

[6] From **acrĭter**; from what adjective is **acrĭter** derived?

[7] **răpinis**; translate by the Singular; see LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

[8] When **possum** governs a Passive Infinitive render it by *can*, if in the *Present Tense;* by *could*, if in a *Past Tense;* e. g. **tĕnēri pŏtĕst**, *can be held;* **tĕnēri pŏtĕrat**, *could be held.*

[9] See *93*.

LESSON XLVI.

DEPONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. **35**: A. & S. **161**: B. **46**; **55**; **93**: B. & M. *304*; *308*: G. **211**; **143**; **144**: H. **225**, 1; **227**.

VOCABULARY.

intŭeor, ērī, intŭĭtŭs sŭm,[1]	*look at.*
nē, adv.	*not*, used with the Subjunctive and Imperative.
nē, conj.	*that not;* after verbs of fearing, *that;* used with the Subjunctive.
pollĭceor, ērī, pollĭcĭtŭs sŭm,	*promise.*
vĕreor, ērī, vĕrĭtŭs sŭm,	*fear.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frūmentum pollĭcentur.[2] 2. Aedui frūmentŭm publĭce pollĭcĭti ĕrant. 3. Vĕreor nē Aedui Rōmānis[3] frūmentum pollĭceantur.[4] 4. Nē[5] frūmentum pollĭceāmur.[6] 5. Sī Aedui frūmentum mātūrum pollĭcĭti essent, Caesar fēlix fuisset. 6. Rōmāni nōn hostem verentur sĕd angustias itinĕris. 7. Nē Divitiăci anĭmum offenděret (*he should offend*) vĕrēbātur. 8. Nunciat[7] Sēquănos terram intuēri. 9. Nĕgat[8] Rōmānos hostem vĕrĭtos essĕ. 10. Sōlem intuēri nōn possŭmus. 11. Nē sōlem intueāmur. 12. Vērēbāmur nē hostes agros nostros pŏpŭlārentur. 13. Vĕrēmur nē hostes agros nostros pŏpŭlentur. 14. Vĕrēmĭni nē hostes agros vestros pŏpŭlentur. 15. Rōmānis frūmentum nōn pollĭcĭti sŭmus. 16. Rōmāni Helvētiis obsĭdes nōn pollĭcēbuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising. 2. They have promised ripe corn. 3. He says that they[9] have promised ripe corn. 4. He fears that the Romans will promise[4] corn to our enemies.[3] 5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls. 6. Let us not look at the men. 7. Let us not fear the difficulties of the route. 8. I fear that the route will be[4] dangerous.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. XXXV., VY., 1. [2] Define a Deponent Verb. (77) What Participles do Deponent Verbs have? What Infinitives?

[3] See *39*.

[4] When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a *verb of fearing* which is in the Present Tense, render it by the *Future Indicative:* **nē Aedui pollĭceantur,** *that the Aedui will promise.*

[5] **nē** is here an adverb.

[6] See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

[7] What is the object of **nunciat**?

[8] See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

[9] *they*, **eos.**

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. **12**, 1, 2 : A. & S. **87**; **88**: B. **142**; **143**, REM. 2 : B. & M. ***137:*** G. **67**; **68**: H. **116**, 1, 2 ; **118**, (1).

97. Declension of **dŏmŭs.** A. & G. **12**, 3, *e* : A. & S. **89**: B. **143**, REM. 8 : B. & M. ***144:*** G. **67**, 2 : H. **119**.

VOCABULARY.

adventŭs, ūs, m.	*arrival, approach.*
commŏveo, ērĕ, commōvi, commōtum,	*move, disturb.*
conspectŭs, ūs, m.	*sight ; view.*
cornū, ūs, n.	*horn ;* of an army, *wing.*
dextĕr, dextrā, dextrŭm,	*right.*
dŏmŭs, ūs, f.	*house;* **dŏmi,** *at home.*
ĕquĭtātŭs, ūs, m.	*cavalry.*
exercĭtŭs, ūs, m.	*army.*
impĕtŭs, ūs, m.	*attack.*
paenĕ, adv.	*almost.*
sempĕr, adv.	*always.*
sustĭneŏ, ērĕ, uī, sustentŭm,	*sustain, withstand.*

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesăris adventū.[1] 2. Helvētii Caesărĭs adventū[2] commōti sunt. 3. In conspectū hostium. 4. Omnium[3] ex conspectū. 5. Paenĕ ĭn conspectū exercĭtūs nostri[4] agri vastantur. 6. Cŭm ĕquĭtātū Helvētiōrum. 7. Magnum nŭmĕrum ĕquĭtātūs sempĕr hăbēbat. 8. Equĭtātŭs sustinēbat hostium impĕtŭm. 9. Lăbiēnus exercĭtuī[5] Rōmāno praefuit. 10. Hostes impĕtūs mīlĭtum sustĭnēre nōn pŏtuērunt. 11. Equĭtātŭm omnem praemittit (*he sends forward*) qui[6] impĕtŭm hostium sustĭneat.[6] 12. Nē hostium adventū commŏveāmur. 13. A dextro cornū; ad dextrum cornū. 14. Caesar dŏmi fuit. 15. Sēquăni ĭtĭnĕrĕ[7] exercĭtum nostrum prŏhĭbēre cōnantur.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See *16*. How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another? (*8*) What is the *Stem-Ending* of each? What are the *Case-Endings* of the Fourth Declension?

[2] See *79*.

[3] See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 10.

[4] **nostri** modifies **exercĭtūs**.

[5] See *67*.

[6] **qui** — **sustĭneat**, *to withstand*.

[7] See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.

LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. **13**, 1, Note, 2, 6: A. & S. **90**, 1, Remark 1: B. **144**, Note; **145**, Rem. 1, 2: B. & M. *all of* ***146; 147:*** G. **69**, Remarks 1, 2; **70**: H. **120**, 1, 2, 4; **121**.

VOCABULARY.

commeātŭs, ūs, m.	*supplies, provisions.*
compărŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*prepare.*
diēs, diēī, m.	*day.*
fĭdēs, fĭdēī, f.	*faith, pledge, promise.*
pernĭcĭēs, pernĭcĭēī, f.	*ruin, destruction.*
prŏfectio, ōnĭs, f.	*departure.*
rēs, rēī, f.	*thing, affair.*
spēs, spēī, f.	*hope, expectation.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Cŭm pernĭcĭē[1] exercĭtūs. 2. Ad suam pernĭcĭĕm. 3. Uno diē. 4. Diem dīcunt (*they appoint*). 5. Sĭnĕ spē. 6. In mĕliōrem[2] spĕm. 7. Magnam ĭn spĕm. 8. Magnas spēs habēmus. 9. Rēs Helvētiis[3] enunciāta est. 10. Pŭtat rēs Helvētiis enunciātas essĕ. 11. Omnes rēs ăd prŏfectiōnem compărātae sunt. 12. Caesar paucos diēs[4] ăd[5] Vĕsontiōnem commeātūs causā[6] mŏrātur. 13. Caesar Gallis

fĭdĕm dăbit. 14. Vĕreor nē Caesar Helvētiis fĭdĕm det.[7] 15. Sī Caesar Germānis fĭdĕm det, Rōmāni nōn laetentur. 16. Caesar Divitiăco[8] maxĭmam fĭdĕm hăbēbat. 17. Germānis parvam hăbet fĭdĕm. 18. Caesări fĭdĕm hăbeāmus.[9]

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans. 2. He says (that) the affair has been reported to the Romans. 3. We had great expectations. 4. We shall prepare all things for the departure. 5. With the ruin of many cities. 6. We shall delay many days near[5] Rome for the sake of provisions. 7. We fear that the leader will give[7] a pledge to the Romans. 8. We have the greatest confidence in[8] the Helvetii. 9. They have very little[10] confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What is the Stem of **pernĭciēs, diēs, spēs, fĭdēs**? When is the final Stem-Vowel short? What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension? Which nouns are complete in the Plural?

[2] See ***84.***

[3] See ***39.***

[4] See ***93.***

[5] See LN. XXXV., NOTE 4.

[6] See General Vocabulary under **causā.**

[7] See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

[8] **Divitiăco — fĭdem hăbēbat,** *had — confidence* IN *Divitiacus;* lit., *had confidence* TO *Divitiacus.* See ***39.***

[9] See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

[10] See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.

LESSON XLIX.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. **33**: A. & S. **158**: B. **87; 88**: B. & M. ***292***: G. **131; 132**: H. **209; 241–248.**

a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this connecting vowel is **u** before **n**, elsewhere **i**. The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination **ō**; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination **ĕ**.

b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (**ē**) between the Stem and Tense-Sign; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (**e**) between the Stem and Ending.

c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this is **a** in the First Singular, elsewhere **e**.

VOCABULARY.

contendō,	**ĕrĕ,**	**contendī,**	**contentŭm,**	*hasten, march rapidly.*
dīmittō,	**ĕrĕ,**	**dīmīsī,**	**dīmissŭm,**	*dismiss.*
gĕrō,	**ĕrĕ,**	**gessī,**	**gestŭm,**	*carry, carry on.*
mittō,	**ĕrĕ,**	**mīsī,**	**missŭm,**	*send.*
tollō,	**ĕrĕ,**	**sustŭlī,**	**sublātŭm,**	*lift, take away.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; name its elements; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar ĭn Ităliam magnis ĭtĭnĕrĭbus[1] contendĭt. 2. Caesar ăd hostes contendĭt ĕquĭtātumquĕ omnem mittĭt.[2] 3. Caesărem hortēmŭr ŭt ăd hostes contendăt. 4. Helvētii lēgātos ăd Caesărem mittunt. 5. Helvētii exercĭtum Rōmānum sŭb jŭgum[3] mīsērunt. 6. Nunciat Helvētios exercĭtum Rōmānum sŭb jŭgum mīsissĕ. 7. Impĕrātor cĕlĕrĭtĕr concĭlium dīmittit. 8. Consul spem fŭgae tollēbăt. 9. Tollĕ, consul, spem fŭgae. 10. Belgae cŭm Germānis continentĕr bellum gessērunt. 11. Sī omnes rēs ăd prŏfectiōnem compărātae sint, ĭn Galliam ultĕrĭōrem contendāmŭs. 12. Vĕrēmur ŭt[4] rex cŭm hostĭbus bellum gĕrăt.[5]

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul. 2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul. 3. The Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.[6] 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke. 5. The king will have taken

away the hope of flight. 6. The king had taken away the hope of flight. 7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

Notes and Questions.

[1] **magnis ītĭnĕrĭbus**, *by long marches.* See *54.*

[2] Name the Stems of **mittŏ**. What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation? Of the First and Second? What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative?

[3] When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why? See General Vocabulary under **jŭgum.**

[4] **ut** after verbs of *fearing* is to be rendered *that not.*

[5] See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

[6] What question does "many years" answer? (*93*)

LESSON L.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE: THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. **33**: A. & S. **158**: B. **87**; **88**: B. & M. *293*: G. **133**; **134**: H. **210.**

See also *73, a,* of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present* Indicative instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

cingŏ,	**ĕrĕ,**	**cinxī,**	**cinctŭm,**	*surround, encircle.*
dēlĭgŏ,	**ĕrĕ,**	**dēlēgī,**	**dēlectŭm,**	*select, choose.*
dīcŏ,	**ĕrĕ,**	**dixī,**	**dictŭm,**	*say, tell.*
dūcŏ,	**ĕrĕ,**	**duxī,**	**ductŭm,**	*lead, draw.*
vincŏ,	**ĕrĕ,**	**vīcī,**	**victŭm,**	*conquer.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Exercĭtus Rōmānus ăb Helvētiis sŭb jŭgum missus est.[1] 2. Orgētŏrix dēlĭgĭtŭr.[1] 3. Cassius lēgātus[2] dēlĭgētŭr. 4. Vix singŭli carri dūcēbantŭr. 5. Vix singŭli carri pĕr angustias

ducti ĕrant. 6. Paenĕ tōtum oppĭdum flūmĭne[8] cingĭtŭr. 7. Nē ăb hostĭbus[3] vincāmur. 8. Sī ăb hostĭbus victī essēmus, victoriā[4] glōriātī essent.[5] 9. Sī Caesar exercĭtui[6] praesit, nōn vincāmĭnī. 10. Nōn impĕrātor[2] dēlĭgēris. 11. Carri pĕr angustias dūcī nōn possunt.[7] 12. Germāni ā Rōmānis vincī nōn pŏtĕrant.[7] 13. Urbs cingĭtur; urbs cingētur. 14. Castra vallo[10] cincta sunt. 15. Sī castra vallo cingantur, nōn vincāmus. 16. Sī Caesar impĕrātor dēlĭgātur, omnes laetentur.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river.[8] 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.[3] 6. We fear that you will be conquered[8] by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible[9] will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that[11] Titus will not[11] send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? (*72*) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice? Which verbs have a Passive Voice? ANS. *Transitive Verbs*, i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (*34*)

[2] See *64*.

[3] See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

[4] See *79* and EX. 2.

[5] See LN. XXXVI., EX. 5.

[6] See *67*.

[7] See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

[8] See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

[9] See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

[10] See *54*.

[11] See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

101. Learn the entire conjugation of **audiŏ,** Active and Passive. A. & G. **34**: A. & S. **160**: B. **83**; **84**: B. & M. ***300***; ***301***: G. **135**–**138**: H. **211**; **212.**

a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel **u**: e. g. audi-**u**-nt, audi-**u**-nto; see also ***99***, *b* and *c*.

VOCABULARY

audiŏ,	**īrĕ,**	**īvī,**	**ītŭm,**	*hear.*
con-vĕniŏ,	**īrĕ,**	**vēnī,**	**ventŭm,**	*come together, assemble.*
mūniŏ,	**īrĕ,**	**īvī,**	**ītŭm,**	*fortify.*
per-vĕniŏ,	**īrĕ,**	**vēnī,**	**ventŭm,**	*come to, arrive.*
vĕniŏ,	**īrĕ,**	**vēnī,**	**ventŭm,**	*come.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Puĕri multas res audiunt. 2. Multae res ā puĕris audiuntŭr. 3. Mīlĭtes impĕrātōrem audient. 4. Impĕrātor ā mīlĭtĭbus audiētŭr. 5. Belgae tōtum oppĭdum mūnīvērunt.[1] 6. Tōtum oppĭdum ā Belgis mūnītŭm est. 7. Sī castra ā mīlĭtĭbus mūnītă essent, hostes nōn vīcissent. 8. Mūniāmŭs urbem Rōmam. 9. Caesar ĭn Galliam cĭtĕriōrem vēnĭt.[2] 10. Vēnī, vīdī,[3] vīcī.[3] 11. Ad rīpam Rhŏdăni omnes convĕniunt. 12. Mīlĭtes hortātŭr ŭt ād rīpam Rhŏdăni convĕniant. 13. In fīnes Gallōrum pervēnērunt, ŭbi (*where*) proptĕr vulnĕra mīlĭtum paucos dies[4] mōrātī sunt. 14. Helvētii ĭn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnĕrant[5] ĕt agros pŏpŭlābantŭr.[6]

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things. 2. Many things are heard by the soldiers. 3. The ambassador will be heard.

4. The Romans came into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a walled town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We came, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural?

[2] How does **vēnĭt** differ from **vĕnĭt** in meaning?

[3] **vīdī** from **vīdĕŏ**; **vīcī** from **vincŏ**.

[4] See ***93***.

[5] How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action? (***42***)

[6] How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action? (***36***)

[7] How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another?

LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN IO.

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of **căpĭŏ**. A. & G. **30**, 3, *h*; **33**: A. & S. **159**: B. **92**: B. & M. ***294–297***: G. **139**; **140**: H. **221–223**.

VOCABULARY.

căpĭŏ,	**capĕrĕ,**	**cēpī,**	**captŭm,**	*take, capture.*
cŭpĭŏ,	**cŭpĕrĕ,**	**cŭpīvī,**	**cŭpītŭm,**	*desire.*
făcĭŏ,	**făcĕrĕ,**	**fēcī,**	**factŭm,**	*make, do;* **ĭtĕr făcĕrĕ,** *to march.*
fŏdĭŏ,	**fŏdĕrĕ,**	**fōdī,**	**fossŭm,**	*dig.*
fŭgĭŏ,	**fŭgĕrĕ,**	**fūgī,**	**fŭgĭtŭm,**	*flee.*
jăcĭŏ,	**jăcĕrĕ,**	**jēcī,**	**jactŭm,**	*throw, hurl.*
răpĭŏ,	**răpĕrĕ,**	**răpuī,**	**raptŭm,**	*seize, plunder.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Rōmānī multa oppĭda cēpērunt. 2. Multa oppĭda ā Rōmānis captă sunt. 3. Helvētii magnas possessiōnes cŭpient.

4. Magnae possessiōnes ăb Helvētiis cŭpientŭr. 5. Nostri mīlĭtes tēla ĭn hostes jăciēbant.[1] 6. Germāni castra Rōmānōrum răpuērunt. 7. Germāni magnam fossam fōdĕrant. 8. Fossas multas ĕt magnas fōdĕrĭmŭs. 9. Fŭgĭtĕ,[2] mīlĭtes,[3] ĭn urbem. 10. Dux nunciat hostes[4] oppĭdum captūrōs[5] essĕ. 11. Lēgātus dixit oppĭdum ā mīlĭtĭbus captŭm essĕ.[6] 12. Una pars ĭnĭtium ā flūmĭne Rhŏdăno căpĭt. 13. Lēgātus vērētŭr nē lŏcus ex interněciōne exercĭtūs nōmen căpiăt.[7] 14. Helvētii pĕr prōvinciam nōstram ĭter făciēbant. 15. Helvētii pĕr agrum Sēquănorum ĭter ĭn Aeduōrum fīnes făcient. 16. Iter faciāmŭs ĭn fīnes Germānōrum. 17. Lēgātus mīlĭtes hortābātŭr quō ĭter cĕlĕrius[9] făcĕrent.[8] 18. Mīlĭtes ĭter cĕlĕrĭus făcĕre nōn possunt.

Notes.

[1] Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form; compare sentences 3 and 4.

[2] See *47*.

[3] See Ln. V., Note 5.

[4] See *53*.

[5] Why **captūrōs** and not **captūrŭs**?

[6] **captŭm esse**, *had been taken*.

[7] See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

[8] See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.

[9] **cĕlĕrius**, an *adjective*, modifying **ĭter**.

LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Deponent Verbs. A. & G. **35**, 1: A. & S. **161**; **158–160**: B. **93**: B. & M. *309*; *310*: G. **145–148**: H. **228–230**.

104. ***Ablative with certain Deponents.*** A. & G. **54**, 6, *d*: A. & S. **245**: B. **258**, *a*: B. & M. *880*: G. **405**: H. **419**, I.

VOCABULARY.

mētior,	**mētīrī,**	**mensŭs**	**sŭm,**	*measure, deal out.*
nītor,	**nītī,**	**nīsŭs** *or* **nixŭs**	**sŭm,**	*strive, endeavor.*
ŏrior,	**ŏrīrī,**	**ortŭs**	**sŭm,**	*rise, begin.*
pŏtior,	**pŏtīrī,**	**pŏtītŭs**	**sŭm,**	*get possession of, obtain.*
prŏfĭciscor,	**prŏfĭcīscī,**	**prŏfectŭs**	**sŭm,**	*set out, depart.*
sĕquor,	**sĕquī,**	**sĕcūtŭs**	**sŭm,**	*follow.*
ūtor,	**ūtī.**	**ūsŭs**	**sŭm,**	*use, make use of.*

Conjugate ; name the Stems;[1] give synopses; parse.

1. Caesar hostes sĕquĭtŭr. 2. Caesar paucos dies[3] mōrātŭs[2] hostes sĕcūtŭs est. 3. Liscus cŭm lĕgiōnĭbus ē castris prŏfectŭs est. 4. Caesar mātūrat ăb urbe prŏfĭcīscī. 5. Belgae ăb extrēmis Galliae fīnĭbus[4] ŏriuntur. 6. Mīlĭtes frūmento nōn ūtentŭr. 7. Frūmento ūtī[5] hŏmĭnes nōn pŏtĕrant. 8. Pāce ūtī nōn possŭmus. 9. Impĕdīmentis castrisquĕ nostri[6] pŏtītī sunt. 10. Nītēbantŭr ŭt impĕrio pŏtīrentŭr. 11. Nītentŭr ŭt[7] tōtīus Galliae impĕrio pŏtiantŭr.[7] 12. Galli nītuntŭr ŭt impĕdīmentis pŏtiantŭr. 13. Dux vĭrīs[8] frūmentum mētītŭr. 14. Liscus mīlĭtĭbus frūmentum nōn mensus ĕrat. 15. Nītāmŭr ŭt tōtīus Itălĭae impĕrio pŏtiāmŭr.

Write in Latin.

1. Liscus will follow the enemy. 2. Our soldiers followed the Gauls. 3. The Gauls were following our army. 4. When I shall have set out from the city. 5. We shall make use of the corn. 6. The lieutenant is striving to get possession of[7] the camp. 7. Let us strive to get possession of[7] the baggage. 8. They attempt to get possession of[5] the camp. 9. The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

[1] ***The Present Stem*** of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending rī in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and the Ending ī in the Third (cf. *28*): e. g. HORTĀRĪ, VĔRĒRĪ,

PŌTĪRĪ, and ŪTĪ are Present Infinitives; HORTA, VĔRE, POTI, and ŪT their Present Stems.

The Supine Stem of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending **ŭs** (cf. ***50***): e. g. HORTĀTŭS, VĔRĪTŭS, PŌTĪTŭS, and ŪSŭS are Perfect Participles; HORTĀT, VĔRĪT, PŌTĪT, and ŪS their Supine Stems.

[2] **mŏrātŭs**, *having delayed.*

[3] **dies**, why in the Accusative?

[4] **fīnĭbŭs**, *limits.*

[5] See ***69***.

[6] **nostrī**, *our men.*

[7] See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

[8] See ***39***.

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs? What is a Deponent Verb? What is the derivation and meaning of *deponent?* See under **dēpōno**, General Vocabulary.

LESSON LIV.

GENERAL EXERCISE: PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. **55**, 3, *b*: A. & S. **237**, REM. 4: B. **221**, RULE XII.: B. & M. ***938***: G. **410**: H. **379**, 3, 1).

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. **55**, 3, *c*, *d*: A. & S. **221**, REM. 3; **254**: B. **249**, RULE XXXVII.: B. & M. ***932***; ***933***: G. **412**: H. **421**, I., II.; **424**, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. **55**, 3, *a*: A. & S. **255**, REMARK 1: B. **254**, RULE XXXIX.: B. & M. ***941***; ***943***: G. **411**: H. **421**, I., II.: **424**, 2.

a. ***105*** answers the question *Whither?* or *To what place?* ***106***, *Where?* or *In what place?* ***107***, *Whence?* or *From what place?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar Gĕnēvam** (***105***) **contendit,** *Caesar hastened* TO GENEVA.
2. **Liscus Aquilēiae** (***106***) **fuit,** *Liscus was* IN AQUILEIA.
3. **Cassius Rōmā** (***107***) **vēnit,** *Cassius came* FROM ROME.
4. **Divitĭăcus plūrĭmŭm dŏmī pŏtĕrat,** *Divitiacus was very powerful* AT HOME.

VOCABULARY.

dŏmŭs, ūs, f.	*house, home:* **dŏmī,** *at home;* **dŏmŭm,** *home, homeward;* **dŏmō,** *from home.*
nĭhĭl (an indecl. neuter noun),	*nothing.*
Noviodūnŭm, ī, n.	*Noviodunum.*
plūrĭmŭs, ă, ŭm,	*most:* **plūrĭmŭm possĕ,** *to be very powerful.*
prae-mittŏ, ĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm,	*send forward.*
rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm,	*return.*
Suēvī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Suevi.*
trā-dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,	*lead across.*

Analyze[1] and parse.

1. Consŭles Rōmae plūrĭmos[1] annos[2] fuērunt. 2. Rōmā vēnērunt lēgāti Gĕnēvam. 3. Divitiăcus plūrĭmum[3] dŏmi[4] atquĕ ĭn rĕlĭquā Galliā pŏtĕrat.[3] 4. Impĕrātor omnem ĕquĭtātum Noviodūnum praemīsit. 5. Dŏmŭm mittam pueros mălos. 6. Suēvi ăd rīpas Rhēni vēnĕrant ĕt dŏmum rĕvertēbantŭr. 7. Nītēmur ŭt Norēiam rĕvertāmŭr. 8. Sī Rōmā prŏfĭciscāmŭr,[5] nōn dŏmŭm rĕvertāmŭr. 9. Vĕrēmŭr ŭt[6] nostri ămīci Rōmae multos dies măneant.[6] 10. Helvētii jăm pĕr angustias ĕt fīnes Sēquănōrum suas cōpias trāduxĕrant ĕt ĭn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnĕrant.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many[1] days.[2] 2. The friends will come home. 3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome. 4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva. 5. He fears that we shall not[6] return[6] home. 6. Let[7] us return home. 7. They will attempt to return to Geneva. 8. He was not able to return home. 9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly[8] they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.

Notes.

[1] See Ln. XXXIX., Note 2. [2] See ***93***.

[3] See Ex. 4. [4] How is **dŏmŭs** declined? (***97***)

[5] How is the Present Subjunctive with **sī** translated? (Ln. XXIX., Ex. 1.)

[6] See Ln. XLVI., Note 4 and Ln. XLIX., Note 4.

[7] See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.

[8] See Ln. LII., Note 9 and Ln. XXXVI., Ex 5.

LESSON LV.

NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*, the declension of **ūnŭs, duŏ, trēs,** and **millĕ.** A. & G. **18,** 1, *a–e*: A. & S. **117,** I.; **118,** 1, 2, 6; **119**: B. **167**; **168,** Rem. 1–5: B. & M. ***201–204; 206; 207***: G. **92–94**; **308**: H. **171**; **172**; **174–179.**

109. ***Extent in Space.*** A. & G. **52,** 4, *c*: A. & S. **236**: B. **220,** Rule XI.: B. & M. ***958***: G. **335**; **336**: H. **378.** This answers such questions as *How far? How deep? How high? How wide? How long?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Castrā ăb urbĕ mīlĭă passuŭm octŏ ăbsunt,** *the camp is* EIGHT MILES *distant from the city.*
2. **Flūmĕn pĕdēs vīgintī altŭm est,** *the river is* TWENTY FEET *deep.*
3. **Mons pĕdēs nongentōs altŭs est,** *the mountain is* NINE HUNDRED FEET *high.*

VOCABULARY.

altĕr, altĕrā, altĕrŭm,	*one of two, the other.*
lātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*wide.*
longŭs, ă, ŭm,	*long.*
passŭs, ūs, m.	*step, pace;* **millĕ passūs,** *a mile;* lit., *a thousand paces.*

pēs, pĕdĭs, m.	*foot.*
pōnŏ, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm,	*place, put;* **castră pōnĕrĕ,** *to pitch a camp.*
vĭgĭlĭă, ae, f.	*watch;* **dē prīmā vĭgĭlĭā,** *in the first watch.*

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies; they must be learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmen est pĕdes quadrāgintā trēs lātum.[1] 2. Mons dĕcĕm mīlĭă[2] trĕcentos pĕdes altus est. 3. Fossa pĕdes trĕcentos longa est, sex pĕdes alta. 4. Fossa pĕdes quindĕcĭm lāta est. 5. Mīlĭtes duas fossas quindĕcĭm pĕdes lātas fŏdērunt. 6. Caesar dŏmum[3] tertiam[4] lĕgiōnem mīsit. 7. Dē tertiā vĭgĭlĭā[5] centŭm ĕt trīgintā quinquĕ mīlĭtes praemittit. 8. Mīlĭă passuum[6] trĭă ăb urbe castra pŏsuĭt. 9. Oppĭda ăd[7] quadrāgintā ĕt vīcos ăd quadringentōs incendunt. 10. Erant ĭtĭnĕra duŏ; ūnum pĕr Sēquănos; altĕrum pĕr prōvinciam nostram. 11. Summa[8] ĕrat căpĭtum Helvētiōrum[9] mīlĭă dŭcentă ĕt sexāgintā trĭă. 12. Circĭter mīlĭă hŏmĭnum centŭm ĕt trīgintā sŭperfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from Rome.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What does **lātum** modify? What is it modified by?

[2] Spelled also with two l's: **milliă.**

[3] See ***105.***

[4] What kind of a numeral is **tertiam**?

[5] The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named **prima vigĭlia, secunda vigĭlia, tertia vigĭlia, quarta vigĭlia.**

[6] A Roman pace (**passus**) as a measure of length was about five feet.

[7] **ăd** with numerals signifies *about.*

[8] **summa,** *the sum total.*

[9] **căpĭtum Helvētiōrum,** *of the Helvetii;* lit. *of the heads of the Helvetii.*

LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. **14, 2,** *d*: A. & S. **91**: B. **151**: B. & M. ***176***: H. **125; 126.**

111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. **55,** 1: A. & S. **253**: B. **252,** RULE XXXVIII.: B. & M. ***949***: G. **392**: H. **426.** The *Ablative of Time* answers the questions *When? At what time? Within what time?* What question does the *Accusative of Time* answer? See ***93.***

EXAMPLES.

1. **Diē septĭmō pervēnĭt,** *he arrived* ON THE SEVENTH DAY.
2. **Proxĭmā noctĕ castrā mōvit,** THE NEXT NIGHT *he broke up camp.*

VOCABULARY.

dī-vĭdŏ, vĭdĕrĕ, vīsī, vīsŭm,	*divide, separate.*
in-cŏlŏ, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm,	*inhabit, dwell.*
jusjūrandŭm, jūrisjūrandī, n.	*oath.*
lăcŭs, ūs, m.	*lake.*
mensĭs, ĭs, m.	*month.*
pŏtens, pŏtentĭs, adj.	*able, powerful.*
prō, prep. w. abl.	*before, for.*
respublĭcă, rēīpublĭcae, f.	*republic, commonwealth.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Galli Rōmānis[1] jusjūrandum dĕdērunt. 2. Dixit Gallos Rōmānis jusjūrandum dĕdisse.[2] 3. Multas res jūrējūrando[3]

sanxērunt (*they ratified*). 4. In[4] rempublĭcam lēgātus sex lĕgiōnes duxit. 5. Prō rēpublĭca; prō castris. 6. Pĕr trēs pŏtentissĭmos pŏpŭlos tōtīus[5] Galliae. 7. In fīnes Lingŏnum die quarto pervēnērunt. 8. Proxĭma nocte dē quarta vĭgĭlia[6] castra mōvērunt. 9. Proxĭmo die Caesar ē castris cōpias suas ēduxit. 10. Sōlis occāsū suas cōpias Ariovistus ĭn castra rĕduxit. 11. Dŏmi[7] mansērunt septĕm menses.[8] 12. Quadrāgintā trēs annos regnāvit. 13. Nītāmur[9] ŭt sōlis occāsu prŏfĭciscāmur.[10] 14. Gallia est[11] omnis dīvīsa[11] in partes trēs, quārum (*of which*) ūnam[12] incŏlunt Belgae, ălĭam[12] Aquītāni,[13] tertiam[12] Galli.[13] 15. A lăcu Lemanno ăd montem Jūram fossam vīgintī pĕdes[14] lātam fōdit. 16. Dē tertia vĭgĭlia cŭm lĕgiōnĭbus trĭbus ē castris prŏfectus est. 17. Dīcit hostes sŭb monte castra pŏsuisse mīlia[14] passuum ăb nostris castris octŏ.[15]

Notes.

[1] See *39*.
[2] See Ln. XVII.
[3] See *54*.
[4] **in**, *against*.
[5] Which adjectives are declined like **tōtus**? (*24*)
[6] See Ln. LV., Note 5.
[7] See *106*.
[8] See *93*.
[9] See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.
[10] See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.
[11] **est** — **dīvīsa** is the same as **dīvīsa** — **est**.
[12] Understand **partem**.
[13] Subject of **incŏlunt** understood.
[14] See *109*.
[15] **octŏ** modifies **mīlia**.

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of **ĕgŏ, tū, suī**. A. & G. **19**, 1-3, *a*, *e*: A. & S. **132**, 1; **133**, 4; **139**, 1-3: B. **171**; **172**, *a*, *b*, Rem. 2; **173**, *a*: B. & M. *230-232; 234; 236*: G. **97-100**: H. **182**; **184**, 1, 4, 5, 7, 9; **185**.

Translate and parse.

1. Egŏ[1] sum mălus[2] sĕd tū es bŏnus. 2. Egŏ vōs sŭb jŭgum mittam. 3. Nōs vōbīs[3] ămīci sŭmus. 4. Nunciat nōbīs tē vēnisse. 5. Egŏ dē prīma vĭgĭlia prŏfectus essem, sī tū vēnisses. 6. Nostră consĭlia hostĭbus ēnunciantur. 7. Obsĭdes intĕr sēsē[4] dant. 8. Intĕr sē jusjūrandum dant. 9. Omnes linguā,[6] instĭtūtis,[6] lĕgĭbus[6] intĕr sē[5] differunt (*differ*). 10. Helvētii suīs fīnĭbus[7] Germānōs prŏhĭbēbant. 11. Caesar suōs mīlĭtes ĭn Galliam mittet sĕd ĭn prōvinciam nostrōs.[8] 12. Tuŭs fīlius ĭn Galliam cĭtĕriōrem ĭter făciet.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman but you are a Gaul. 2. He will announce to you (that) we have come. 3. Your plans will be reported to us. 4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other. 5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other. 6. I shall send my soldiers home[9] but yours into Gaul. 7. You will be friendly to us. 8. I fear that you will not[10] be[11] friendly to us.

Notes.

[1] *Form for parsing a pronoun.* — **ĕgŏ** is a personal pronoun; declined, *ĕgŏ, meī, mĭhĭ, mē, mē;* Plural, *nōs, nostrŭm* or *nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs;* made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of **sŭm**; rule (see ***32***).

[2] See ***64***.

[3] See ***86***.

[4] **inter sēsē**, *to each other;* lit. *among themselves.*

[5] **inter sē**, *from one another.*

[6] See Ln. I., Note 5.

[7] See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.

[8] **nostrōs**, *ours:* sc. **milĭtes.**

[9] See ***105***.

[10] See Ln. XLIX., Note 4.

[11] See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of **hĭc, illĕ, istĕ, ipsĕ, is, īdĕm.** A. & G. **20**, 1, 2: A. & S. **134**, REM. 6; **135**: B. **173**, *b*, 1–3: B. & M. ***239; 243:*** G. **101; 102**: H. **186**, I.–VI.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōrŭm[1] omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgae. 2. Hī omnes linguā, institūtis, lĕgĭbus inter sē differunt. 3. Eōrum[2] ūnă pars ĭnĭtĭum căpit ā flūmĭne Rhŏdăno. 4. Mĭnĭme[3] ăd eōs mercātōres[4] saepe commeant. 5. Eī fīliam suam ĭn matrĭmōnium dat. 6. Is sĭbĭ[5] lēgātiōnem ăd cīvĭtātes suscēpit. 7. Eă res est[6] Helvētiis ēnunciāta. 8. Eōdĕm die[7] cŭm duābŭs[8] lĕgiōnĭbus prŏfĭciscētur ĕt iīs[9] dŭcĭbus. 9. Ipsĕ[10] ex Helvētiis uxōrem hăbet. 10. Ipsī ĭn eōrum[11] fīnĭbus bellum gĕrunt. 11. Mīlia[12] passuum trĭă[8] ăb eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iisdĕm[13] nostra consĭlia hostĭbus ēnunciantur. 13. Ipsĕ dē quarta vĭgĭlia eōdem ĭtĭnĕre[14] ăd eōs contendit ĕquĭtātumque[15] omnem antĕ sē mittit.

Notes.

[1] Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. **hi omnes differunt,** *all* THESE *differ;* **ad has suspiciōnes,** *to* THESE *suspicions.* In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

[2] **is** is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person,* and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of *he, she, it;* e. g. **is sĭbĭ suscēpit,** HE *took upon himself;* **ăd eōs,** *to* THEM; **ĭn eōrŭm fīnĭbus,** *in* THEIR *territory;* **ējŭs mīlĭtes,** HIS *soldiers;* **eī dat,** *he gives* TO HIM.

[3] **mĭnĭme** modifies **saepe.**

[4] See ***32.***

[5] See ***67.***

[6] **est ēnunciāta = ēnunciāta est.**

[7] See ***111.***

[8] See ***108.***

[9] Is **iis** used substantively or adjectively?

[10] **ipsĕ — hăbet,** *he himself has.*

[11] See NOTE 2.

[12] See ***109.***

[13] When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word *one, man, men, persons,* or *soldiers,* if masculine; *thing* or *things,* if neuter: e. g. **hĭc est fortis,** THIS ONE *is brave,* or THIS MAN *is brave;* **ăb iisdĕm,** *by* THE SAME PERSONS; **ĭdĕm cōnantur,** *they attempt* THE SAME THING.

[14] **eōdem ĭtĭnĕre,** *by the same route.*

[15] See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. **21,** 1, *e*: A. & S. **136**: B. **173,** *c,* REM. 1: B. & M. **245**: G. **103**: H. **187,** 1, 3.

115. Agreement. A. & G. **48**: A. & S. **206**: B. **278,** RULE LIII.: B. & M. ***683; 684:*** G. **615; 616**: H. **445,** 1, *w. fine print.*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Aquītānia ăd eam partem Oceănī, quae est ăd Hispāniam, pertĭnet,** *Aquitania extends to that* PART *of the Ocean* WHICH *is near Spain.*
2. **Flūmĭne Rhēno, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvĭdit,** *by the river* RHINE, WHICH *separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans.*
3. **Proxĭmīquĕ sunt Germānis, quĭbuscum[1] bellum gĕrunt,** *and they are very near* TO THE GERMANS, *with* WHOM *they carry on war.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Proxĭmīquĕ sunt Germānis,[2] quī[3] trans Rhēnum incŏlunt. 2. Ad montem Jūram, quī fīnes Sēquănōrum ăb Helvētiis dīvĭdit. 3. Ab Ocĕlo, quŏd est cĭtĕrĭōris prōvĭnciae

oppĭdum[4] extrēmum. 4. Allobrŏges, quī trans Rhŏdănum vīcos possessiōnesquĕ habēbant, ăd Caesărem vĕniunt. 5. Vŏcat Castĭcum, cūjŭs[5] păter regnum multos annos[6] obtĭnuĕrat. 6. Pontem,[7] quī est ăd Gĕnēvam, jŭbet rescindi.[8] 7. Undĭque lŏci nātūrā[9] Helvētii contĭnentur: ūna ex parte[10] flūmĭne[11] Rhēno[12] lātissĭmo atquĕ altissĭmo, qui[16] agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvĭdit; altera [13] ex parte monte Jūrā altissĭmo, quī est intĕr Sēquănos ĕt Helvētios; tertiā[14] lăcu Lemanno ĕt flūmĭne Rhŏdăno, quī prōvinciam nostram ăb Helvētiis dīvĭdit.

Write in Latin.

1. They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the Garonne. 2. The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 3. He summons Titus, whose brother held the sovereignty many years. 4. The Germans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva. 5. He came with the very[15] soldiers whom we have seen. 6. He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large number.

Notes.

[1] Observe that **cŭm** is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal Pronouns.

[2] See ***86***.

[3] *Form for parsing a relative.* — **quī** is a Relative Pronoun; declined, *quī, quae, quŏd, cūjus*, etc. (*give its entire declension*); made in the Masculine Plural to agree with its antecedent **Germānis** (see ***115***); and in the Nominative, because it is the subject of **incŏlunt** (***32***).

[4] See ***64***.

[5] **cūjŭs**, *whose*.

[6] See ***93***.

[7] See ***53***.

[8] See ***52***.

[9] See Ln. XLV., Note 4.

[10] **ūna ex parte**, *on one side*.

[11] See ***54***.

[12] See ***25***.

[13] **alterā**, *second*.

[14] **tertiā**, sc. **ex parte**.

[15] Translate *the very* by the proper case of **ipsĕ**.

[16] A. & G. **199**: A. & S. **206**, (9): B. **286**, *d*: B. & M. ***694***: G. **616**, 3, II.: H. **445**, 4.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives **quĭs** and **quī**; of the Indefinites **ălĭquĭs** and **quĭs**. A. & G. **21**, 1, *a*, 2, *d*: A. & S. **137**, 1; **138**, 1: B. **173**, *d*, REM. 1, *e*, 1, 3: B. & M. ***246; 249–251; 1041, second part:*** G. **104**, REMARK; **105**: H. **188**, I. II., 1, 2; **189–191**, 1, 2.

a. **ălĭ-quĭs** is used both as a *substantive* and as an *adjective;* as a *substantive* it is declined as follows:

		Masculine.	*Neuter.*
SING.	*Nom.*	ălĭ-quĭs,	ălĭ-quĭd,
	Gen.	ălĭ-cūjŭs,	ălĭ-cūjŭs,
	Dat.	ălĭ-cuī,	ălĭ-cuī,
	Acc.	ălĭ-quĕm,	ălĭ-quĭd,
	Abl.	ălĭ-quō,	ălĭ-quō.
PLUR.	*Nom.*	ălĭ-quī,	
	Gen.	ălĭ-quōrŭm,	
	Dat.	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	
	Acc.	ălĭ-quōs,	
	Abl.	ălĭ-quĭbŭs.	

As an *adjective* it is declined:

		Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
SING.	*Nom.*	ălĭ-quĭs *and* ălĭ-quī,	ălĭ-quă,	ălĭ-quŏd,
	Gen.	ălĭ-cūjŭs,	ălĭ-cūjŭs,	ălĭ-cūjŭs,
	Dat.	ălĭ-cuī,	ălĭ-cuī,	ălĭ-cuī,
	Acc.	ălĭ-quĕm,	ălĭ-quăm,	ălĭ-quŏd,
	Abl.	ălĭ-quō,	ălĭ-quā,	ălĭ-quō.
PLUR.	*Nom.*	ălĭ-quī,	ălĭ-quae,	ălĭ-quă,
	Gen.	ălĭ-quōrŭm,	ălĭ-quārŭm,	ălĭ-quōrŭm,
	Dat.	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,
	Acc.	ălĭ-quōs,	ălĭ-quās,	ălĭ-quă,
	Abl.	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ălĭ-quĭbŭs.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quĭs mē vŏcat?** WHO *calls me?*
2. **Quĕm vīdisti?** WHOM *did you see?*
3. **Quĭd dŏmum nōn vēnērunt?** WHY *have they not come home?*
4. **Alĭquĕm ăd mē mittent,** *they will send* SOMEBODY *to me.*
5. **Alĭquĭd accĭdit,** SOMETHING *has happened.*
6. **Sī quĭd accĭdat Rōmānis,** *if* ANYTHING *should happen to the Romans.*

Parse the pronouns.

1. Quĭs vōs vŏcāvit? 2. Quĕm vĭdeo? 3. Alĭquĕm vīdi. 4. Alĭquōs ăd eŭm mīsērunt. 5. Alĭquĕm lŏcum occŭpāvit. 6. Cŭm ălĭquĭbŭs princĭpum vēnit. 7. Sī quĭs vĕniat, laeter. 8. Quĭd nōn dŏmi fuisti? 9. Quae est mŭlier quae vēnit? 10. Sī quĭd mĭhi accĭdat, nōn laetēris. 11. Sī quĭd Rōmānis accĭdat, nōn fortĭtĕr pugnent. 12. Alĭquĕm ăd tē mittam. 13. Alĭquĭs dixit hunc essĕ consŭlem. 14. Eŭm hortābor ŭt cŭm ălĭquĭbŭs mīlĭtum prŏfĭciscātur. 15. Vĕreor nē quĭs vĕniat. 16. Vereor nē quĭd eī accĭdat. 17. Ut ălĭquōs vĭrōrum mittant, eos hortēmur. 18. Cŭm ălĭquĭbŭs princĭpum illĕ vēnit.

LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. **41**; **43**, 1, *a*, *b*, 3, *a*: A. & S. **198**, I., II., 1–11, *first statement under each*; **278**: B. **180**, *the whole*; **330**, RULE LXXXI.: B. & M. ***488–503***; ***1369***; G. **15**, IV., 3; **476**; **485**; **494**; **500**; **501**: H. **308–311**, *the whole*; **587**, I., 2.

VOCABULARY.

aut, conj.	*or*; **aut — aut**, *either — or.*
ĕt — ĕt, conj.	*both — and.*
ĭtăquĕ, conj.	*accordingly, therefore.*

năm, conj.	*for.*
nĕ, nonnĕ, nŭm,	interrogative particles (see NOTE 1).
nĕquĕ, conj.	*and not;* **nĕquĕ — nĕquĕ,** *neither — nor.*
postquăm, conj.	*after, as soon as.*
proptĕreā, adv.	*for this reason.*
quamquăm, conj.	*although.*
quŏd, conj.	*because.*
sĕd, conj.	*but.*

Translate, and parse[2] the conjunctions.

1. Impĕrātor ĕt[3] magnus ĕt fortis est. 2. Nĕquĕ[3] magni nĕquĕ fortes sunt consŭles. 3. Dux nōn magnus est sĕd fortis. 4. Dumnŏrĭgem vŏcat eīquĕ[4] fīliam suam ĭn mātrĭmōnium dat. 5. Ităquĕ rem suscēpit. 6. Hōrŭm[5] omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgae, proptĕreā quŏd ā cultu atquĕ hūmānĭtāte prōvinciae longissĭme[6] absunt. 7. Helvētii ĭter pĕr prōvinciam făciunt, proptĕreā quŏd ăliud[7] ĭter hăbent nullum.[7] 8. Is pāgus appellābātur Tĭgurīnus[8]; năm omnis cīvĭtas Helvētia ĭn quattuor pāgos dīvīsa est. 9. Aut[3] suis fīnĭbus[9] eos prŏhĭbent, aut ipsī[10] ĭn eōrum fīnĭbus bellum gĕrunt. 10. Mīles, quamquăm est fortis, nōn pugnābit. 11. Postquăm Caesar pervēnit, ĭtă respondit. 12. Fortisnĕ[11] est consul? 13. Nonnĕ fortes sunt consŭles? 14. Nŭm fortis est consul? 15. Sī quĭd hăbērem,[12] ĭd tĭbi dărem. 16. Nītĭtur ŭt vincat.[13] 17. Nonnĕ consŭles dŏmum vēnĕrant? 18. Nŭm Tĭtus lēgātus circŭm Gĕnēvam hiemāvit?

Notes and Questions.

[1] **nĕ** is used to ask for information merely; **nonnĕ,** when the answer *yes,* and **nŭm,** when the answer *no* is expected or implied; e. g. **bŏnusnĕ est puer?** *is the boy good?* **nonnĕ bŏnus est puer?** *is not the boy good?* i. e. the boy is good, is he not? **nŭm bŏnus est puer?** *the boy is not good is he?*

[2] *To parse a conjunction* is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate; to which subdivision of its class it belongs; what it connects: e. g. in sentence 6, **quŏd** is a *subordinate conjunction,* because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause; *causal,* because it introduces a reason; it connects the subordinate clause **proptĕreā — absunt** with the principal clause **hōrum — Belgae.**

[3] When a conjunction is doubled, as **et — et, aut — aut,** the first strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.

[4] See *39* and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2. [5] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 1.

[6] See LN. XLII. [7] See *24*.

[8] Use the same word, **Tigurinus,** in translation.

[9] See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6. [10] What does **ipsi** emphasize?

[11] The interrogative particle **nĕ** is appended to the first word of its clause.

[12] **hăbĕrem,** *I had.* [13] See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

LESSON LXII.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following References will aid materially in translating and understanding the *Ablative Absolute, Subjunctive Mood,* and *Indirect Discourse.* A. & G. **45,** 1–8, *coarse and fine print:* A. & S. **200–203,** *coarse print:* B. **203,** *a–g;* **288,** *a–f:* B. & M. ***1399–1401; 1404; 1405; 1407; 1408; 1411; 1413:*** G. **192; 193; 474,** 1–4; **475; 505–508:** H. **343–361,** *coarse print.*

VOCABULARY.

cīvĭs, ĭs, m. *and* f.	*citizen.*
in-fluŏ, fluĕrĕ, fluxī, fluxŭm,	*flow into, empty.*
inter-fĭcĭŏ, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm,	*kill.*
poscŏ, poscĕrĕ, pŏposcī, (no supine)	*demand.*
postquăm, conj.	*after, as soon as.*
re-spondeŏ, spondērĕ, spondī, sponsŭm,	*reply, answer.*

Translate and analyze[1] the following sentences.

1. Ejus rĕi pŏpŭlus Rōmānus est testis. 2. Divĭco respondit[2] ējus rĕi pōpŭlum Rōmānum essĕ testem. 3. Hic pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium consŭlem interfēcĕrat ĕt ējus exercĭtum sŭb jŭgum mīsĕrat. 4. Postquăm Caesar pervēnit, obsĭdes pŏposcit. 5. Flūmen[3] est Arar, quŏd ĭn Rhŏdănum

influit. 6. Caesar ā lăcu Lemanno, qui ĭn flūmen Rhŏdănum influit, ăd montem Jūram, qui fīnes Sēquănōrum ăb Helvētiis dīvĭdit, fossam perdūcit. 7. Quis[4] es? Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Rĕlinquēbātur ūna pĕr Sēquănos via, quā proptĕr angustias īre (*to go*) nōn pŏtĕrant. 9. Ob eas causas eī mūnītiōni,[5] quam fēcĕrat, Tĭtum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. 10. Vēni ŭt tē vĭdeam.

Write in Latin.

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke? 2. They will not send us home will they[6]? 3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived? 4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens. 5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea. 7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy. 8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good. 10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. XXXVI., Examples and Notes.
[2] What is the object of **respondit**?
[3] See ***64***.
[4] See ***64***; what is the subject of **es**?
[5] See ***67***.
[6] See Ln. LXI., Note 1.

LESSON LXIII.

PARTICIPLES.

119. Definition. A. & G. **25**, 1–3: A. & S. **148**, 1, (1.)–(4): B. **53**, *d*: B. & M. ***265***, *last clause*: H. **575**.

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. **72**, 1: A. & S. **274**, 2: B. **323**, RULE LXXV.: B. & M. ***1343:*** G. **278**; **279**: H. **572–574.**

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. **72**, 3: A. & S. **274**, 3: B. **318**: B. & M. ***1350:*** G. **667**: H. **578**, I.–V.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sēsē omnes flentes Caesări ăd pĕdes prōjēcērunt,** *all* WEEPING *threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.*
2. **Liscus multos dies mŏrātus prŏfectus est,** *Liscus* HAVING DELAYED *many days set out;* or, *Liscus,* AFTER HE HAD DELAYED *many days, set out.*
3. **Caesar eōrum prĕcĭbus adductus bellum suscēpit,** *Caesar* HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED *by their entreaties undertook the war;* or, *Caesar,* BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED *by their entreaties, undertook the war.*
4. **Helvētii ējus adventu commōti lēgātos mittunt,** *the Helvētii* BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DISTURBED) *by his arrival send legates.*

VOCABULARY.

ad-dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,	*lead to, influence.*
flĕŏ, flĕrĕ, flēvī, flētŭm,	*weep.*
in-dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,	*lead into, induce.*
pĕtŏ, pĕtĕrĕ, pĕtīvī and **pĕtīī, pĕtītŭm,**	*beseech, ask, beg for.*
prō-jĭcĭŏ, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm,	*throw forward;* **sē prōjĭcĕrĕ,** *to throw one's self down.*

Analyze, and parse the participles.

1. Omnes flentes[1] pācem pĕtiērunt. 2. Mŭlĭĕres flentes vĭros[2] implōrābant. 3. Belgae spectant ĭn ŏrientem sōlem. 4. Hostes ĭn nostros vĕnientes tēla conjĭciēbant. 5. Mīlĭtes sēsē Tĭto[3] ăd pĕdes prōjĭcient. 6. Helvētii his rēbus[4] adducti[5] cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus pācem confirmant. 7. Liscus ōrātiōne Caesăris adductus lŏcūtus est. 8. Hac ōrātiōne adducti intĕr sē[6] jusjūrandum dant. 9. Is[7] regni cŭpĭdĭtāte in-

ductus conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit. 10. Sēquănni paucos dies mŏrāti ăd[8] Gĕnēvam prŏfecti sunt. 11. Helvētii omnium rērum ĭnŏpiā adducti lēgātos ăd eum[7] mīsērunt. 12. Caesar dē tertia vĭgĭlia prŏfectus ăd[9] Gĕnēvam pervēnit.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of Cassius. 2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing enemy. 3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set out towards Rome. 4. Ariovistus, because he had been disturbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him.[7] 5. The Germans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine. 6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates to him.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Parse a participle like an adjective (LN. VI., NOTE 1), giving in addition the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from the verb.

[2] **vĭros**, *husbands.* [3] See ***39***; translate as if it were a Genitive.

[4] See ***54***.

[5] Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.

[6] See LN. LVII., NOTE 4. [7] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[8] **ăd**, *towards, for.* [9] **ăd**, *in the vicinity of.*

[10] What participles has a transitive verb? See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 5.

LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

122. A. & G. **54**, 10, *b*, NOTE: A. & S. **257**, REMARKS 1, 2: B. **264**, RULE XLIX., *a–c*: B. & M. ***964–966***: G. **408**; **409**: H. **430**; **431**, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Marco Messālā ĕt Marco Pīsōne consŭlĭbus,** *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls;* or better, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.*

2. **Hoc responso dăto discessit,**
   - *a. this reply having been given*
   - *b. when this reply had been given*
   - *c. having given this reply*
   - *d. after giving this reply*
   - *e. after he had given this reply*

   } *he departed.*

VOCABULARY.

con-vertŏ, vertĕre, vertī, versŭm,	*turn about, change.*
dis-cēdŏ, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm,	*depart.*
ĭbĭ, adv.	*there.*
rĕ-linquŏ, linquĕrĕ, līquī, lictŭm,	*leave behind, leave.*
responsŭm, ī, n.	*answer, reply.*
rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm,	*return.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hāc ōrātiōne[1] hăbĭtā[2] Caesar concĭlium dīmīsit. 2. Hāc ōrātiōne ăb Divitiăco hăbĭtā omnes auxĭlium pĕtiērunt. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne hăbĭtā conversae sunt omnium mentes. 4. Convŏcātis eōrum[3] princĭpĭbus Caesar grăvĭter[4] eos accūsat. 5. Marco Messālā ĕt Marco Pīsōne consŭlĭbus conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit. 6. Ibĭ Centrōnes[5] lŏcis sŭpĕriōrĭbus occŭpātis ĭtĭnĕre[6] exercĭtum prŏhĭbēre cōnantur. 7. Mūnītis castris duas ĭbĭ lĕgiōnes rĕlīquit ĕt partem auxĭliōrum. 8. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi dŏmum[7] rĕverti coepērunt (*began*). 9. Convŏcātis eōrum princĭpĭbus, quōrum[8] magnam cōpiam ĭn castris hăbēbat, grăvĭter eos accūsat. 10. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi, qui ăd rīpas Rhēni vēnĕrant, dŏmum rĕverti coepērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for[9] peace. 2. After giving this reply all departed. 3. He came to Rome[7] in the consulship of Titus and Cassius. 4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries. 5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

[1] The learner should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.

[2] **hăbĭtā**, from **hăbĕo**, signifying *hold, deliver, make.*

[3] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[4] From what adjective is **grăvĭter** derived? What is the Stem of the adjective? What is the ending of the adverb? See LN. XLII.

[5] See General Vocabulary. [6] See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

[7] See ***105***.

[8] What is the gender and number of **quōrŭm**? Why? (***115***) In what case is it? Why? (***40***)

[9] *for* belongs to the *verb; peace* must be rendered by the *Accusative.*

LESSON LXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS: FERO.

123. Learn the entire conjugation of **fĕrŏ**. A. & G. **37**, 4: A. & S. **179**: B. **109**, IV.: B. & M. ***422-424***: G. **186**: H. **292**.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis[1] auxĭlium fert. 2. Auxĭlium mīlĭtĭbus[2] ā dŭce fertŭr. 3. Sī dux suis auxĭlium fĕrăt,[3] laetentur.[3] 4. Sī auxĭlium mīlĭtĭbus ā dŭce fĕrātŭr,[3] laetentur.[3] 5. Ii[4] suis auxĭlium ferrĕ nōn pŏtĕrant. 6. Fertĕ, mīlĭtes, vestris[1] auxĭ-

lium. 7. Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus diū injūrias tŭlĭt. 8. Injūriae ā pŏpŭlo Rōmāno diū lātae sunt. 9. Pŏpŭlum Rōmānum hortātus est ŭt[5] diū injūrias ferrent.[5] 10. Caesar dixĭt pŏpŭlum Rōmānum diū injūrias tŭlissĕ. 11. Nŭmĕrus eōrum,[4] qui[6] arma fĕrēbant, magnus fuit. 12. Nŭmĕrus eōrum, ā quĭbus arma fĕrēbantŭr, magnus fuit. 13. Nŭmĕrus eōrum, qui arma ferrĕ pŏtĕrant, magnus fuit. 14. Nŭmĕrus eōrum, ā quĭbus arma ferrī pŏtĕrant,[7] parvus fuit. 15. Sī Gallis auxĭlium ferrēs, Galli vincĕrent. 16. Sī quis[8] Rōmānis auxĭlium tŭlissĕt, vīcissent.

Notes and Questions.

[1] The *Plural Masculine* of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where in translation some such word as *men, soldiers, friends,* may be supplied; the *Plural Neuter,* where we may supply *things, possessions.*

[2] See *39.*

[3] See LN. XXXVI., EX. 4.

[4] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[5] See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

[6] See *115.*

[7] See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

[8] What is **quis** when immediately preceded by **sī, nĭsĭ, nē,** or **nŭm**? How is it declined? See LN. LX.

LESSON LXVI.

COMPOUNDS OF **FERO.** — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

124. Ablative of Specification. A. & G. **54,** 9: A. & S. **250:** B. **261,** RULE XLVI.: B. & M. ***889:*** G. **398:** H. **429.** This answers the question *In what respect?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Virtūte praecēdunt,** *they excel* IN COURAGE.
2. **Nŭmĕro ăd duŏdĕcim,** *about twelve* IN NUMBER.

VOCABULARY.

af-fĕrŏ,	**af-ferrĕ,**	**at-tŭlī,**	**al-lātŭm,**[1]	*bring to, carry to, offer.*
con-fĕrŏ,	**con-ferrĕ,**	**con-tŭlī,**	**col-lātŭm,**	*bring together, carry together, collect.*
dif-fĕrŏ,	**dif-ferrĕ,**	**dis-tŭlī,**	**dī-lātŭm,**	*carry different ways; differ.*
in-fĕrŏ,	**in-ferrĕ,**	**in-tŭlī,**	**il-lātŭm,**	*bring into, bring upon, make upon.*
rĕ-fĕrŏ,	**rĕ-ferrĕ,**	**rĕ-tŭlī,**	**rĕ-lātŭm,**	*bring back, carry back.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hi omnes linguā,[2] instĭtūtis,[2] lēgĭbus[2] intĕr sē differunt. 2. Oppĭda sua omnia nūmĕro[2] ăd duŏdĕcim[3] incendunt. 3. Eō[4] circĭtĕr[5] hŏmĭnum nūmĕro sēdĕcim mīlia[3] mīsit. 4. Helvētii rĕlĭquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt. 5. Helvētii tōti Galliae[6] bellum infĕrēbant. 6. Pars cīvĭtātis Helvētiae insignem călămĭtātem pŏpŭlo Rōmāno intŭlĕrat. 7. Helvētii mĭnus făcĭle fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferrĕ pŏtĕrant.[7] 8. Obsĭdes, arma, servi conferuntur. 9. Aedui dixērunt frūmentum conferri.[8] 10. Caesar sarcĭnas[10] in ūnum lŏcum conferri[8] jussit.[9] 11. Helvētii cŭm omnĭbus suis carris sĕcūti[11] impĕdīmenta[10] ĭn ūnum lŏcum contŭlērunt. 12. His responsis[12] ăd Caesărem rĕlātis ĭtĕrŭm ăd eum Caesar lēgātos cŭm his mandātis mittit.

Write in Latin.

1. All differed from one another in language and laws. 2. They will burn their cities, about five in number. 3. The Romans will make war upon the Gauls.[6] 4. I fear that the Romans will make[13] war upon the Gauls. 5. Let[14] us make war upon both the Germans and the Belgae. 6. The baggage will be collected into one place. 7. The Gauls, having followed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Accent the compounds of **fĕro** correctly: **āffĕro, affĕrre, āttŭli, allātum.**

[2] See ***124.***

[3] See ***108.***

[4] **eō** is an adverb; see GEN. VY.

[5] **circĭtĕr modifies the numeral.**

[6] See ***67.***

[7] **pŏtĕrant,** *could.*

[8] See ***52.***

[9] **jussit,** from **jŭbeo.**

[10] What is the difference between **sarcĭnae** and **impĕdimenta**? See General Vocabulary under **sarcĭna** and **impĕdimentum.**

[11] **sĕcūti** from **sĕquor**; where is it made?

[12] See ***122.***

[13] See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

[14] See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): **VOLO** AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of **vŏlŏ, nōlŏ, mālŏ.** A. & G. **37**: A. & S. **178**: B. **109**, VI.: B. & M. ***417–419***: G. **189**: H. **293.**

VOCABULARY.

ā-vertŏ, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm,	*turn away.*
mālŏ, mallĕ, māluī,	*be more willing.*
nōlŏ, nollĕ, nōluī,	*be unwilling, not wish.*
undĕ, adv.	*from which place, whence.*
văcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*be unoccupied.*
vŏlŏ, vellĕ, vŏluī,	*be willing, wish.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

1. Aeduos[1] flāgĭtāre[2] Tĭtus frūmentum[1] vult. 2. Helvētiis[3] bellum inferrĕ vŏlŭmŭs. 3. Galli fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferrĕ vŏluĕrant. 4. Sī lēgātus pugnāre vĕlĭt, hostes fŭgiant. 5. Nŭm[4] prŏfĭcisci dē tertia vĭgĭlia vultĭs? 6. Dumnŏrix quăm[5] plūrĭmas cīvĭtātes hăbēre vŏlēbăt. 7. Consul impĕdīmenta[6] ĭn ūnum lŏcum conferri vult. 8. Sī vīs mē[6] flēre.

9. Montem ā Cassio occŭpāri vŏlŭĭt. 10. Mons, quem[6] ā Lābiēno occŭpāri vŏlŭĭt, ăb hostĭbus tĕnētur. 11. Dīcit vellĕ sēsē[6] dē rēpublĭca[7] cŭm eo lŏqui. 12. Caesăr ăb Helvētiis discēdĕre[2] nōlēbăt. 13. Nōlŭĭt eum lŏcum văcāre Liscus. 14. Dixit Caesărem ăb Helvētiis discēdĕre[2] nollĕ. 15. Nōlŭĭt eum lŏcum, undĕ Helvētii discessĕrant, văcāre. 16. Vir injūrias diū ferre nōlĕt. 17. Sī lēgātus ĭter făcĕre nōlit, mīlĭtes laetentur. 18. Vĕreor nē[8] dux suis auxĭlium ferre nōlĭt.[8] 19. Iter ăb Arăre Helvētii āvertĕrant ā quĭbus discēdĕre nōlēbăt. 20. Pugnāre[2] Helvētii mālunt quăm fŭgĕre.[2] 21. Nonnĕ māvīs tuis[9] auxĭlium ferrĕ quăm fŭgere? 22. Omnes virtūte[10] praecēdĕre māvult quăm essĕ consul. 23. Gallis prŏdesse quăm bellum inferrĕ māluit. 24. Exercĭtui praeesse mālĕt quăm dŏmi[11] mănēre.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you[4]? 2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.[3] 3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing[8] to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his[9] (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor[10] than to be rich.

Notes.

[1] See *71.*

[2] See A. & G. **57**, 8, *d*: A. & S. **273**, 4: B. **315**, *f*, 3: B. & M. *1152; 1153:* G. **424**: H. **551**, II.

[3] See *67.*

[4] See Ln. LXI., Note 1.

[5] See Ln. XLII., Note 7.

[6] See *53.*

[7] See *110.*

[8] See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

[9] See Ln. LXV., Note 1.

[10] See *124.*

[11] See *106.*

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): EO AND FIO.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of **eŏ** and **fĭŏ**. A. & G. **37**, 6, 7: A. & S. **180**; **182**, REM. 3: B. **109**, II., V.: B. & M. ***413-415; 426-429:*** G. **185**; **188**, REMARK: H. **294**; **295**, 1, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dē Caesărĭs adventu certior factus est,** *he was informed of Caesar's arrival.*
2. **Caesar certior factus est hostes castra pŏsuisse,** *Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.*
3. **Caesărem certiōrem faciunt hostes transīre,** *they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.*

VOCABULARY.

certŭs, ă, ŭm,	*certain, sure;* **certior fĭĕrī,** *to be informed;* lit., *to be made more certain.*
eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ĭtŭm,	*go.*
ex-eŏ, īrĕ, īī, ĭtŭm,	*go out, go forth, depart.*
fĭŏ, fĭĕrī, factŭs sŭm,	*be made, become, occur.*
trans-eŏ, īrĕ, īī, ĭtŭm,	*go across, cross.*

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. Dŏmum[1] eunt; Rōmam ībo; Bibracte[1] eāmŭs.[2] 2. Pĕr angustias ībāmŭs; pĕr Gallōrum fīnes īvērunt. 3. I,[3] mīles, dŏmum; ītĕ, pueri, dŏmum. 4. Hostes pĕr nostram prōvinciam īvĕrant. 5. Lēgātus Bibracte īrĕ contendĭt. 6. Caesar cŭm his quinque lĕgiōnĭbus īrĕ[4] contendit. 7. In eam partem Galliae ĭtūrōs[5] essĕ Helvētios dixit. 8. Proptĕr angustias īrĕ[4] nōn pŏtĕrant. 9. Helvētii dē fīnĭbus suis cŭm omnĭbus cōpiis exībant. 10. Nītuntur ŭt ē fīnĭbus exeant.[6] 11. Magnus nŭmĕrus eōrum[7] dŏmo[8] exībĭt. 12. Hic

pāgus ūnus dŏmo patrum nostrōrum mĕmŏriā[9] exiĕrăt.[16] 13. Flūmen Helvētii rătĭbus[10] transībant. 14. Sī flūmen transeant,[11] eos vincāmus. 15. Sī hostes Rhŏdănum transīrĕ cōnentur, prŏhĭbeāmus. 16. Boii[12] trans Rhēnum incŏluĕrant ĕt ĭn agrum Norĭcum[12] transiĕrant. 17. Undĭquĕ ūno tempŏre ĭn hostes impĕtus fīĕbăt. 18. His rēbus[13] fīĕbăt. 19. Dē ējus[7] adventu Helvētii certiōres facti sunt. 20. Caesar eōdem die ăb explōrātōrĭbus certior factŭs suas cōpias praemittĕre vŏlēbat. 21. Duo vĭri consŭles[14] factī ĕrunt. 22. Pĕr explōrātōres Caesar certior factŭs est Sēquănos pĕr prōvinciam ĭter fēcissĕ.[15]

Notes and Questions.

[1] What question do **dŏmum** and **Bibracte** answer? See ***105, a.***

[2] See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

[3] In what is the Imperative used? (***47***)

[4] See ***69.***

[5] Why is **ītūros** in the Acc. Plural?

[6] How is the Subjunctive with **ŭt** to be translated after verbs of *striving* and *endeavoring?*

[7] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[8] What question does **dŏmo** answer?

[9] See ***111.***

[10] **rătis, is,** f. *raft.*

[11] See LN. XXIX., EX. 1.

[12] See GEN. VY.

[13] See ***79.***

[14] See ***64.***

[15] See EX. 2.

[16] **exiĕrăt = exivĕrăt.**

LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. **38**, 1, *a–c*, NOTE: A. & S. **183**, 1–3: B. **111**, *b*, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. ***434–437:*** G. **190**, 5: H. **297**, I.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. **39**, *a–d*: A. & S. **184**, 1: B. **112**; **113**: B. & M. ***451; 452; 454:*** G. **199**: H. **298**; **299.**

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. **57**, 8, *a*, *b*: A. & S. **269**, *coarse print:* B. **315**, *a*, *b*: B. & M. ***1147:*** G. **423**: H. **549.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Perfăcĭle est impĕrio pŏtīri** (*129*), *it is very easy* TO GET POSSESSION OF *the government.*
2. **Mihi īre** (*129*) **lĭcet,** *it is permitted me* TO GO; or, *I may go.*
3. **Mihi īre lĭcuit,** *it was permitted me* TO GO; or, *I might have gone.*
4. **Rŏgat ŭt id sĭbi făcĕre lĭceat,** *he asks that it be permitted him* TO DO *this;* better, *he asks permission to do this.*
5. **Rŏgābat ŭt id sĭbi făcĕre lĭcēret,** *he was asking that it be permitted him* TO DO *this;* or, *permission to do this.*
6. **Me īre** (*129*) **ŏportet,** *it is necessary that I should go;* or, *I ought to go.*
7. **Me īre ŏportuit,** *it was necessary that I should go;* or, *I ought to have gone.*
8. **Dīcit me īre ŏportēre,** *he says it is necessary that I should go;* or, *he says that I ought to go.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mĕmĭnērunt,[1] ōdērunt. 2. Mĕmĭnĕram Tĭtum; vīdĕram Cassium. 3. Mĕmento vĕnīre[2]; dīcit sē mĕmĭnisse. 4. Liscus dixit Dumnŏrĭgem ōdisse Caesărem ĕt Rōmānos. 5. Et tē ĕt illum[3] ōdĕrāmus. 6. Nĕquĕ[4] mē nĕquĕ eum ōdit. 7. Divitĭăcus multis cŭm lacrĭmis Caesărem obsĕcrāre[5] coepit. 8. Suēvi, qui[6] ăd rīpas Rhēni vēnĕrant, dŏmum rĕverti coepērunt. 9. Omnes mīlĭtes Rhŏdănum transīre coepērunt. 10. Frūmentum[7] conferri[8] ŏportet. 11. Nos[7] Rhēnum transīre ŏportuit.[9] 12. Dīcit illum ăd sē vĕnīre ŏportēre.[10] 13. Caesărem dē ējus adventu certiōrem[11] fĭĕri ŏportuit. 14. Rŏgāvērunt ŭt sĭbi[12] lĭcēret concĭlium tōtīus Galliae convŏcāre. 15. Rogāvit ŭt sĭbi īre lĭcēret. 16. Tĭbi eo die īre lĭcēbit. 17. Perfăcĭle est tōtīus Galliae impĕrio pŏtīri. 18. Tĭbi Caesărem certiōrem făcĕre dē meo adventu lĭcet.[13] 19. Tĭbi dŏmum īre lĭcuit.[14]

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home. 2. Are you going home? 3. You ought to go home. 4. We ought to have gone home. 5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva. 6. You could have gone to Bibracte; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte. 7. You are not going to Rome are you? 8. Are you not going to Rome? 9. Who will go home with me? 10. He says that corn ought to be collected. 11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home. 12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What is a Defective Verb? What is an Impersonal Verb?
[2] See *52.*
[3] **illum**, *that one;* see LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.
[4] See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.
[5] See *69.*
[6] Where is **qui** made and why?
[7] See *53.*
[8] See *129.*
[9] See EXAMPLE 7.
[10] In this sentence **illum** is the subject of **vĕnire**; **illum — vĕnire**, the subject of **ŏportĕre**; **illum — ŏportĕre**, the object of **dicit.**
[11] See LN. LXVIII., EX. 1.
[12] How does this **sĭbi** differ from the **sĭbi** in sentence 15?
[13] What is the subject of **lĭcet**?
[14] See EXAMPLE 3.

LESSON LXX.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

130. ***Periphrastic Conjugations.*** A. & G. **25,** 4; **40,** *a–c*: A. & S. **162,** 14, 15: B. **94,** *a, b*: B. & M. *328; 329:* G. **149; 150; 239; 243:** H. **231; 232.**

131. ***Dative of Agent.*** A. & G. **51,** 4, *a*: A. & S. **225,** III.: B. **248,** RULE XXXVI.: B. & M. *347:* G. **353:** H. **388.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Doctūrus sŭm,** *I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.*
2. **Doctūrus ĕrat (fuit),** *he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.*
3. **Audiendi sŭmus,** *we must be heard; we ought to be heard.*
4. **Tĭbi (131) audiendi sŭmus,** *you must hear us; you ought to hear us.*
5. **Agri consŭli vastandi ĕrant (fuērunt),** *the consul had to lay waste the fields.*
6. **Vexillum prōpōnendum ĕrat,** *the flag had to be displayed.*
7. **Oppĭdum oppugnandum ĕrit,** *the town will have to be stormed.*
8. **Oppĭdum vōbis mūniendum ĕrit,** *you will have to fortify the town.*

Translate[1] and parse.

1. Obsĭdes tĭbi dătūrus sum.[2] 2. Caesar mĭhi obsĭdes dătūrus fuit. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānos victūrus fuit. 4. Hostes ăd rīpas Rhēni ĭtūri sunt. 5. Nunciat hostes ăd rīpas Rhēni ĭtūros essĕ. 6. Frūmentum[3] Aeduos[3] flāgĭtātūrus lēgātus ĕrat. 7. Dŏmum ĭtūri sŭmus. 8. Patriae[4] prōfŭtūri estis. 9. Nōbis[5] bellum gĕrendum ĕrit. 10. Duo consŭles creandi sunt. 11. In hostes vĕnientes tēla nōbis conjĭcienda ĕrant. 12. Oppĭdum lēgāto expugnandum ĕrit. 13. Pĕr Alpes mīlĭtĭbus ĭter faciendum ĕrit. 14. Frūmentum Aeduis dandum est.[6] 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesări ĭn Galliam mātūrandum est.[7] 17. Caesar mātūrandum sĭbi essĕ existĭmāvit. 18. Dē ējus adventu Caesar certior[8] făciendus est. 19. Caesări omnia ūno tempŏre ĕrant ăgenda: vexillum prōpōnendum,[9] quod[10] ĕrat insigne, quŭm ăd arma concurri[13] ŏportēret[11]; signum tŭba dandum[9]; ăb ŏpĕre rĕvŏcandi[12] mīlĭtes; qui[16] paulo longius[14] aggĕris pĕtendi causā[15] prōcessĕrant arcessendi[12]; ăcies instruenda,[9] mīlĭtes cŏhortandi.[12]

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter. 2. I was intending to go to Bibracte. 3. The lieutenant was to storm the town. 4. My brother is about to go to the city. 5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors. 6. The boys must hasten home. 7. We must carry on war with our neighbors. 8. You will have to fortify the town. 9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers. 10. The consul had to give the signal. 11. The city will have to be fortified. 12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Imitate the Examples in translation.

[2] Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.

[3] See *71*. [4] See *67*.

[5] See *131* and Example 8; what is the literal translation?

[6] What are the different translations of this sentence? See *39* and *131*.

[7] **mātūrandum est** has no *personal* subject; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.

[8] See LN. LXVIII., EXAMPLE 1. [9] Supply **ĕrat**.

[10] Why is **quod** in the Neuter Singular?

[11] See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7; what is the subject of **ŏportĕret**? Translate by the Indicative.

[12] Supply **ĕrant**. [13] **concurri**, *to rush*.

[14] **paulo longius**, *a little too far*.

[15] **aggĕris — causā**, *for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound*.

[16] The antecedent of **qui** is **ii**, which is the subject of **arcessendi (ĕrant)**.

LESSON LXXI.

USE OF THE DATIVE.

132. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. A. & G. **51, 2, *a*, *b***: A. & S. **223**, REM. 2; **225**, I.: B. **241**, RULE XXIX.; **244**, RULE XXXII.: B. & M. ***824; 831:*** G. **345**: H. **385** and 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Cīvĭtāti (*132*) persuāsit ŭt exīrent,**[1] *he persuaded* THE STATE *to go forth.*
2. **Novis rēbus studēbat,** *he was eager* FOR A REVOLUTION; lit., *for new things.*
3. **Allobrŏgĭbus impĕrāvit,** *he gave orders* TO THE ALLOBROGES.
4. **Plăcuit ei (*132*) ut mittĕret,**[1] *it pleased* HIM *to send.*
5. **Sī Allobrŏgĭbus satisfaciat,** *if he should give satisfaction* TO THE ALLOBROGES.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hoc[2] făcĭlius eis persuāsit, quŏd[3] undĭquĕ lŏci nātūrā[4] Helvētii contĭnentur. 2. Is, Marco Messāla ĕt Marco Pisōne consŭlĭbus,[5] regni cŭpĭdĭtāte inductus[6] conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit ĕt cīvĭtāti[20] persuāsit, ŭt dē fīnĭbus suis cŭm omnĭbus cōpiis exīrent.[1] 3. Persuādent Raurăcis ĕt Tulingis, fīnĭtĭmis,[7] ŭti, eōdem ūsi[8] consĭlio,[9] oppĭdis[5] suis vīcisquĕ exustis,[10] ūnā cŭm iis prŏfĭciscantur.[1] 4. Orgētŏrix cŭpĭdĭtāte regni adductus[6] nŏvis rēbus[11] stŭdēbat. 5. Liscus dixit Dumnorĭgem făvēre Helvētiis sĕd ōdisse[12] Caesărem ĕt Rōmānos. 6. Caesar Allobrŏgĭbus impĕrāvit ŭt iis frūmenti cōpiam făcĕrent.[1] 7. Quamobrem plăcuit[13] ei ŭt ăd Ariovistum lēgātos mittĕret. 8. Huic lĕgiōni Caesar indulsĕrat praecĭpuē. 9. Sī[14] Aeduis dē[15] injūriis, quas ipsis[16] sociisquĕ eōrum[17] intŭlĕrint,[18] ĭtĕm sī Allobrŏgĭbus sătisfăciant, cŭm iis pācem făciat.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go[1] forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,[2] because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade (our) neighbors to adopt[8] the same plan, burn up[10] their houses and set out[1] in company with us.

5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends. 6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for[15] the wrongs which he has brought upon them[16] and their[17] allies. 7. We can[19] not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. [2] See *79.*

[3] **quŏd** is a *conjunction;* what kind of a clause does it introduce?

[4] See LN. XLV., NOTE 4 and *79.* [5] See *122.*

[6] See LN. LXIII., EXAMPLES. [7] See *25.*

[8] **ūsi** from **ūtor,** *to adopt;* lit., *having adopted, made use of.*

[9] See *104.*

[10] **oppĭdis — exustis,** *to burn up their towns, etc.;* lit., *their towns, etc. having been burned up.* (*122*)

[11] See EX. 2.

[12] What kind of a verb is **ōdisse**? (*127*)

[13] **plăcuit** is an impersonal verb in this sentence; what is its subject?

[14] Sc. **sătisfăciant.** [15] **de,** *for.*

[16] See *67.* [17] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[18] **intŭlĕrint** from **infĕro**; render it by the Perfect Indicative.

[19] See LN. XXVIII., EX. 1.

[20] **cīvĭtāti,** *state,* is used here for **cīvĭbus,** *citizens;* hence the dependent clause has **exirent** instead of **exiret.**

LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. **54,** 5: A. & S. **256,** 2: B. **261,** RULE XLVI., *c*: B. & M. *895:* G. **399:** H. **417.**

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. **57,** 3, 4: A. & S. **260,** REM. 6: B. **309,** RULE LXVIII.: B. & M. *1193; 1197:* G. **247; 249; 253; 256:** H. **487; 488,** I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nōn amplius mīlĭbus (*133*) passuum octōdĕcĭm ăbĕrat,** *he was not more* THAN EIGHTEEN MILES *distant.*
2. **Nihil virtūte (*133*) mĕlius est,** *nothing is better* THAN VIRTUE.
3. **Cīves mei sint (*134*) beāti,** MAY *my fellow-citizens* BE *happy.*
4. **Amēmus (*134*) pătriam,** LET US LOVE *our country.*
5. **Vĕniat (*134*),** LET HIM COME.
6. **Nē hŏdie prŏfĭcĭscāmur (*134*),** LET US *not* SET OUT *to-day.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte mĕlĭus est? 2. Scīmus sōlem mājōrem essĕ terrā. 3. Amīcĭtia, quā[1] nĭhil mĕlius hăbēmus, nōbis[2] ā dis[3] immortālĭbus dăta est. 4. Haec[4] sunt dulcĭōra mĕlle. 5. Mīlĭtes fortiōres sunt impĕrātōre. 6. Caesar ab oppĭdo nōn amplius mīlĭbus passuum duōbus castra pōsuit. 7. Ab urbe nōn amplius mīlĭbus passuum quinquĕ castra pōnēmus. 8. Ipse ăb hostium castris nōn longius mille[5] ĕt quingentis passĭbus ăbĕrat. 9. Quŏd ā Bibracte, oppĭdo Aeduōrum longē maxĭmo ĕt cōpiōsissĭmo, nōn amplius mīlĭbus passuum octōdĕcĭm ăbĕrat, rĕi frūmentārĭae prospĭciendum[6] existĭmāvit:[7] ĭter[8] ăb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. 10. Mīlĭtes vĕniant. 11. Sītis[9] beāti. 12. Hos latrōnes interfĭciāmus. 13. Caesărem dē ējus adventu certiōrem făciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte dē quarta vĭgĭlia nē prŏfĭcĭscāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fīat dē meo consĭlio. 16. Iter cĕlĕrius pĕr Galliam făciāmus. 17. Cīvĭtāti[10] persuādeāmus ŭt exeant.[11] 18. Nŏvis rēbus nē stŭdeāmus. 19. Hostĭbus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduis dē injūriis, quas eōrum sŏciis[12] intŭlĭmus, sătisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar. 2. Nothing is better than friendship. 3. The lieutenant is braver than the general. 4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city.

5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch. 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these men. 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May it please[13] you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See ***133.*** [2] See ***39.***
[3] See ***20.*** [4] See Ln. LVIII., Note 13.
[5] Is **mille** in this sentence an adjective or substantive? See ***108.***
[6] Sc. **essĕ.** See ***130.***
[7] **rĕi — existĭmāvit,** *he thought that he ought to look out for supplies.*
[8] Introduce the translation of this clause with *accordingly.*
[9] See Example 3. [10] See ***132.***
[11] See Ln. LXXI., Note 20. [12] See ***67.***
[13] See Ln. LXXI., Example 4.

LESSON LXXIII.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES.

135. Sequence of Tenses. A. & G. **58,** 9, 10, Rule: A. & S. **258,** A, B, I., 1, 2: B. **61; 311,** Rule LXX.: B. & M. ***1163; 1164:*** G. **216; 510:** H. **198,** 2; **480; 481,** I., II.

136. Subjunctive of Purpose. A. & G. **64,** 1, *a*; **70,** 3, *a*: A. & S. **262; 264,** 5: B. **295,** Rule LVIII.; **299,** Rule LXI.: B. & M. ***1205; 1207:*** G. **543 – 546; 632:** H. **489,** I., II. This answers such questions as *For what purpose? With what design? With what aim? To what end? Why? What?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Vĕnit**	**ŭt vĭdeat,**	*he comes*	TO SEE, IN ORDER TO SEE, THAT HE MAY SEE.
2. **Vĕnĭet**		*he will come*	
3. **Vēnit**		*he has come*	
4. **Vēnĕrit**		*he will have come*	

5. **Vĕnīēbat** } **ŭt vĭdēret,** *he was coming* } TO SEE, IN ORDER
6. **Vēnit** } **ŭt vĭdēret,** *he came* } TO SEE, THAT HE
7. **Vēnĕrat** } **ŭt vĭdēret,** *he had come* } MIGHT SEE.

8. **Ut consĕqui posset pontem fēcit,** *he made a bridge* THAT HE MIGHT BE ABLE *to pursue.*

9. **Postŭlāvit nē Aeduis bellum inferret,** *he demanded* THAT HE SHOULD NOT MAKE *war* UPON *the Aedui.*

10. **Equĭtātum qui sustĭnēret impĕtum mīsit,** *he sent cavalry* TO WITHSTAND *the attack.*

11. **Nē offendĕret vĕrēbātur,** *he was fearing* THAT *he should offend.*

12. **Ut sŏcii vĕnīrent vĕrēbātur,** *he was fearing* THAT *the allies would* NOT *come.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Allobrŏgĭbus impĕrāvit, ŭt iis frūmenti cōpiam făcĕrent. 2. Caesar Dumnŏrĭgem mŏnet, ŭt ĭn rĕlĭquum tempus[1] suspīciōnes vītet. 3. Năm, nē ējus supplĭcio[2] Divitiăci ănĭmum offendĕret, vĕrēbātur. 4. Dumnŏrĭgi persuāsit ŭt ĭdĕm[3] cōnārētur. 5. Cōpias suas Caesar ĭn proxĭmum collem subdūcit ĕquĭtātumquĕ, qui sustĭnēret hostium impĕtum, mīsit. 6. Lēgātos ăd eum mittunt qui dīcant agros consŭli[4] vastandos essĕ.[5] 7. Postŭlāvit nē aut Aeduis[6] aut eōrum sŏciis[6] bellum inferret. 8. Nonnulli pŭdōre adducti,[7] ŭt tĭmōris suspīciōnem vītārent, rĕmănēbant. 9. Caesar omnium ex conspectu rĕmōtis ĕquis,[8] ŭt spem fŭgae tollĕret, cŏhortātus[9] suos[10] proelium commīsit. 10. Caesar ăd Ariovistum lēgātos mīsit, qui ăb eo postŭlārent, ŭti ălĭquem[11] lŏcum mĕdium utrĭusque[12] collŏquio[13] dīcĕret. 11. Castella commūnit, quo[14] făcĭlius, sī sē invīto[15] transīre cōnārentur, prŏhĭbēre possit.

Write in Latin.[16]

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn. 2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers. 3. We shall advise

him[17] to avoid suspicions in the future.[1] 4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future. 7. We shall send cavalry to withstand the attack of the Gauls. 8. Caesar, after removing his horse[8] out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely. 9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that[14] we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

[1] **in rĕlĭquum tempus**, *in the future;* lit., *into the remaining time.*
[2] See *79.*
[3] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13; where would **idem** be made?
[4] See *131.*
[5] See *130* and *62.*
[6] See *67.*
[7] See LN. LXIII., EX. 3.
[8] See *122* and EXAMPLES.
[9] See LN. LXIII., EX. 2.
[10] See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.
[11] How declined? See *116, a.*
[12] **mĕdium utriusque**, *midway between both;* **uterque** is declined like **uter.** (*24*)
[13] See *39.*
[14] **quo** is preferred to **ut** when its clause contains a comparative.
[15] **se invīto**, *against his will;* see *122;* lit., *he unwilling.*
[16] In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.
[17] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

LESSON LXXIV.

USE OF THE DATIVE (*continued*).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. **51,** 3: A. & S. **226**: B. **243,** RULE XXXI.: B. & M. *821:* G. **349**: H. **387.**

138. Two Datives. A. & G. **51,** 5: A. & S. **227,** REM. 3: B. **246,** RULE XXXIV.: B. & M. *848:* G. **350**: H. **390,** I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Est mĭhi** (*137*) **dŏmi păter,** *I have a father at home;* lit., *a father is to me at home.*
2. **Sex vĭro** (*137*) **fĭlii fuērunt,** A MAN *had six sons.*
3. **Haec mĭhi** (*138*) **sunt cūrae,** *these* (*things*) *are* A CARE TO ME; lit., *these* (*things*) *are* FOR A CARE TO ME.
4. **Tertiam ăciem nostris subsĭdio mīsit,** *he sent the third line* AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).
5. **Nŏvissĭmis praesĭdio ĕrant,** *they were* A PROTECTION TO THE HINDMOST.

Analyze and parse.

1. Mĭhi est ămīcus; tĭbi sunt plūrĭmi ămīci. 2. Magni pĕdes sunt meo fratri sĕd căput parvum. 3. Erit consŭli magnus exercĭtus. 4. Impĕrātōri fuērunt mīlĭtes multi ĕt[1] fortes. 5. Virtus est vĭro hŏnōri. 6. Dixit haec sĭbi essĕ cūrae. 7. Quinquĕ cŏhortes castris praesĭdio rĕlīquit. 8. Lēgāto[2] impĕrāvit ŭt quinquĕ cŏhortes castris praesĭdio rĕlinquĕret.[3] 9. Magno ūsui nostris fuit. 10. Năm ĕquĭtātui,[4] quem[5] auxĭlio Caesări Aedui mīsĕrant, Dumnŏrix praeĕrat. 11. Gallis magno ăd pugnam[6] ĕrat[7] impĕdīmento, quŏd nōn sătĭs commŏdē pugnāre pŏtĕrant. 12. Boii ĕt Tulingi, qui hŏmĭnum mīlĭbus[8] circĭtĕr quinděcĭm agmen hostium claudēbant ĕt nŏvissĭmis[9] praesĭdio ĕrant, ex ĭtĭnĕre[10] nostros circumvēnēre.[11] 13. His rēbus[12] cognĭtis Caesar Gallōrum anĭmos verbis[13] confirmāvit pollĭcĭtusquĕ est sĭbi eam rem cūrae fŭtūram.[14] 14. Ariovistus dixit ămīcĭtiam pŏpŭli Rōmāni sĭbi ornāmento ĕt praesĭdio nōn dētrīmento essĕ[15] ŏportēre.[16]

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in

battle that we could[17] not fight with sufficient ease. 6. He will order the lieutenant[2] to send[18] soldiers as a relief to our men. 7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief to our men. 8. The consul ought[16] to send soldiers as a relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. VI., NOTE 5. [2] See ***132***.

[3] Why is the Subjunctive used? (***136***) Why the Imperfect Tense? (***135***) What question does **ut — rēlinquĕret** answer? (***136***)

[4] See ***67***.

[5] **quem**; why is the Masculine Singular used? Why the Accusative?

[6] **ăd pugnam**, *in battle.*

[7] The subject of **ĕrat** is the substantive clause **quŏd — pŏtĕrant.**

[8] Is **mīlĭbus** used as a noun or as an adjective? (***108***); see also ***54***.

[9] **nŏvissĭmis**, *to the hindmost*; lit., *to the newest.*

[10] **ex ītĭnĕre**, *on the march.*

[11] What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural?

[12] See ***122***. [13] See ***54***.

[14] Sc. **essĕ.** [15] See ***129***.

[16] See ***128*** and EX. 8. [17] See LN. XXVIII., EX. 2.

[18] See ***136***.

LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. Subjunctive of Result. A. & G. **65**, 1, *b*, 2; **70**, 4, *a*: A. & S. **262**, REM. 3; **264**, 1, 6, 7: B. **296**, RULE LIX.; **297**, RULE LX.; **301**, RULE LXII.: B. & M. ***1218–1220***: G. **553–558**; **551**, 1, 2: H. **489**; **495**, 2; **498**; **500.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Tantus tĭmor exercĭtum occŭpāvit ŭt omnium mentes perturbāret,** *such fear seized the army* THAT IT DISTURBED *the minds of all.*

2. **Dixit nōn sē tăm barbărum essĕ ŭt nōn scīret,** *he said he was not so uncivilized* AS *not* TO KNOW.

3. **Fīēbat ŭt mĭnus lātē văgārentur,** *it happened* THAT THEY ROAMED ABOUT *less extensively.*

4. **Rĕtĭnēri nōn pŏtĕrant quīn tēla conjĭcĕrent,** *they could not be prevented* FROM HURLING *weapons.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mīlĭtes nŭmĕro[1] tăm multi ĕrant, ŭt agmĭni[2] nŏvissĭmo magno praesĭdio[2] essent.[3] 2. His rēbus[4] fīēbat[5] ŭt ĕt mĭnus lātē văgārentur ĕt mĭnus făcĭle fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferre possent. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sē tăm barbărum essĕ, ŭt nōn scīret bello[6] Allobrŏgum proxĭmo Aeduos Rōmānis auxĭlium nōn tŭlisse. 4. Tantus sŭbĭto tĭmor omnem exercĭtum occŭpāvit, ŭt nōn mĕdiocrĭtĕr omnium mentes[7] anĭmosquĕ perturbāret. 5. Mons autĕm altissĭmus impendēbat, ŭt[8] făcĭle perpauci prŏhĭbēre possent. 6. Divĭco respondit: Itŭ[9] Helvētios ā mājōrĭbus suis instĭtūtos essĕ,[10] ŭti obsĭdes accĭpĕre, nōn dăre, consuērint.[11] 7. Ita dies[12] circĭtĕr quindĕcĭm ĭter fēcērunt, ŭti intĕr nŏvissĭmum hostium agmen ĕt nostrum prīmum[13] sex mīlia passuum interessent. 8. Ipse autĕm Ariovistus tantos sĭbi[14] spĭrĭtus, tantam arrŏgantiam sumpsĕrat, ŭt fĕrendus[15] nōn vĭdērētur. 9. Germāni rĕtĭnēri nōn pŏtĕrant quin ĭn nostros tēla conjĭcĕrent.

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled. 2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee. 3. We are so many in number[1] that we can easily keep their[17] army from the march.[16] 4. For these reasons[4] it happened that they easily kept our army from the march.[16] 5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors. 6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van.[13] 7. This man assumes[19] such lofty airs

that he does not seem endurable.[15] 8. The lieutenant assumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable.[15] 9. The Romans could not be prevented from making[18] war upon their neighbors.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See ***124.*** [2] See ***138.***

[3] Why the *Imperfect?* (***135***)

[4] **his rēbus,** *for these reasons;* see ***79.***

[5] What is the subject of **fīĕbat?** [6] See ***111.***

[7] How do **mens** and **anĭmus** differ in signification? See GEN. VY.

[8] **ŭt,** *so that.* [9] **ita** modifies **institūtos essĕ.**

[10] **institūtos essĕ** is object of **rēspondit.** (***52***)

[11] See A. & G. **30,** 6, *a*: A. & S. **162,** 7: B. **95,** *d*: B. & M. ***315:*** G. **151,** 1: H. **234.**

[12] See ***93.*** [13] **primum,** sc. **agmen**; render *van.*

[14] See ***39.***

[15] **fĕrendus,** *endurable;* lit. (*one*) *to be endured.*

[16] See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6. [17] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[18] See EXAMPLE 4. [19] *to assume,* **sĭbi sūmĕre.**

LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

140. Genitive with Adjectives. A. & G. **50,** 3, *b*: A. & S. **213**: B. **234,** RULE XXIII.: B. & M. ***765:*** G. **373**: H. **399.**

141. Genitive in Predicate. A. & G. **50,** 1, *c*: A. & S. **211,** REM. 8, (1)–(3): B. **230,** REM. 1: B. & M. ***780:*** G. **365**: H. **401.**

142. Genitive with certain Verbs. A. & G. **50,** 4, *a*: A. & S. **216**: B. **235,** RULE XXIV.: B. & M. ***788:*** G. **375**: H. **406,** II.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Qui rĕi** (***140***) **mīlĭtāris pĕrītissĭmus hăbēbātur,** *who was considered very skilful* IN *military* SCIENCE.

2. **Bellandi** (*140*) **cŭpĭdi,** *desirous* OF CARRYING ON WAR.
3. **Jūdĭcium impĕrātōris** (*141*) **est,** *the decision is* THE GENERAL'S; or, *belongs* TO THE GENERAL.
4. **Gallia est pŏpŭli** (*141*) **Rōmāni,** *Gaul belongs* TO THE *Roman* PEOPLE.
5. **Rĕmĭniscātur pristĭnae virtūtis** (*142*) **Helvētiōrum,** *let him recollect* THE *former* VALOR *of the Helvetii.*
6. **Vĕtĕris contŭmēliae** (*142*) **oblīvisci vult,** *he is willing to forget* THE *old* INSULT.

Analyze and parse.

1. Lēgātus belli pĕrītus[1] hăbētur. 2. Lēgātus nītĭtur ŭt belli pĕrītus fīat.[2] 3. Nītēbātur ŭt rĕi mīlĭtāris pĕrītissĭmus fĭĕret.[3] 4. Publius Considius, qui rĕi mīlĭtāris pĕrītissĭmus hăbēbātur ĕt[5] ĭn exercĭtu Luci Sullae ĕt posteā ĭn Marci Crassi[4] fuĕrat, cŭm explōrātōrĭbus praemittĭtur. 5. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tăm impĕrītum esse rērum, ŭt nōn scīret[6] Aeduos auxĭlio[7] pŏpŭli Rōmāni nōn ūsos essĕ.[8] 6. Mīlĭtes hortābor, ŭt glōriae sempĕr memŏres sint. 7. Nos mŏnuit ŭt virtūtis sempĕr mĕmŏres essēmus. 8. Qua dē causa[9] hŏmĭnes bellandi[10] cŭpĭdi magno dŏlōre affĭciēbantur. 9. Dīcit ipsum esse Dumnŏrĭgem cŭpĭdum nŏvārum rērum. 10. Dīcunt dē summa belli[11] jūdĭcium impĕrātōris essĕ[12] sē existĭmāvisse.[12] 11. Nĕquĕ jūdĭcat Galliam pŏtius essĕ Ariovisti quăm pŏpŭli Rōmāni. 12. Mīlĭtum est fortĭtĕr pugnāre;[13] impĕrātōris est impĕrāre. 13. Divĭco Caesărem hortātur ŭt rĕmĭniscātur ĕt[14] vĕtĕris incommŏdi pŏpŭli Rōmāni et pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 14. Caesar rĕcentium injūriārum oblīvisci nōn vult.[15] 15. Omnis contŭmēliae oblīviscāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. I am not considered very skilful in war.[16] 2. I shall strive to become[2] skilful in war. 3. This lieutenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was

considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers. 4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.[10] 5. The decision concerning the general management[11] of affairs belongs[17] to the consul. 6. This house is Caesar's. 7. We ought to forget insults.[18] 8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See ***64***.
[2] See ***126*** and ***136***.
[3] Why Imperfect? (***135***)
[4] **In Marci Crassi**, sc. **exercĭtu**; translate, *in that of Marcus Crassus.*
[5] **ŏt** connects **hăbēbātur** and **fŭĕrat**.
[6] See ***139*** and Example 2.
[7] See ***104***.
[8] **ūsos essĕ** depends upon **sciret**.
[9] **qua dē causa**, *for this reason.*
[10] **bellandi** is a Gerund; parse it like a noun.
[11] **dē summa belli**, *concerning the general management of the war.*
[12] **essĕ** depends upon **existīmāvisse**; **existīmāvisse** upon **dicunt**.
[13] See ***129***.
[14] See LN. LXI., NOTE **3**.
[15] See ***125***.
[16] See ***140***.
[17] See EX. 3.
[18] See ***142***.

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. **59**, 1, *a*, *b*, 2, *a* – *c*: A. & S. **261**, 1, 2: B. **305**, *a*, 1 – 3; **306**, RULE LXVI.: B. & M. ***1259*** – ***1268***: G. **590**; **591**; **596** – **599**: H. **502**; **507** – **510**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī vincit, laetātur,** *if he is conquering, he is rejoicing.*
2. **Sī vincet, laetābĭtur,** *if he conquers (shall conquer), he will rejoice.*
3. **Sī vīcĕrit, laetābĭtur,** *if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will rejoice.*

4. **Sī vincat, laetētur,** *if he should conquer, he would rejoice.*

5. **Sī vincĕret, laetārētur,** *if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.*

6. **Sī vīcisset, laetātus esset,** *if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Sī pugnat, vincit. 2. Sī pugnābit, vincet. 3. Sī pugnāvĕrit, vincet. 4. Sī pugnet, vincat. 5. Sī pugnāret, vincĕret. 6. Sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset. 7. Sī Helvētii Allobrŏgĭbus[1] sătisfăcient, cum iis pācem făciam. 8. Sī Helvētii Allobrŏgĭbus sătisfăciant, cŭm iis pācem făciam. 9. Caesar dīcit sī Helvētii Allobrŏgĭbus sătisfăciant, sēsē cŭm iis pācem esse factūrum.[2] 10. Sī quid[3] vultis,[10] rĕvertĭmĭni.[4] 11. Sī pācem pŏpŭlus Rōmānus cŭm Helvētiis faciet, ĭn eam partem ībunt[11] Helvētii ŭbĭ eos esse vŏluĕris.[5] 12. Sīn bello[6] persĕqui[7] persĕvērābis,[8] rĕmĭniscĕre[4] ĕt vĕtĕris incommŏdi[9] pŏpŭli Rōmāni ĕt pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 13. Sī vĕtĕris contŭmēliae oblīvisci vellem,[10] nŭm[12] ētiăm rĕcentium injūriārum mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre[7] possem? 14. Sī id fīet, prōvinciae[13] pĕrīcŭlōsum ĕrit. 15. Caesar dīcit sī nēmo[14] sĕquātur, sē cŭm sōla dĕcĭma lĕgiōne ĭtūrum essĕ.[11]

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui,[1] he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything,[3] ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish[5] us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing[8] us with war,[6] let them recall to mind[15] our former valor.[9] 9. If we were willing to forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

Notes and Questions.

[1] See ***132***. [2] **essĕ factūrum = factūrum essĕ.**

[3] See ***116*** and Ex. 6. [4] See ***47***.

[5] What does the Future Perfect Tense denote? (***42***)

[6] See ***54***. [7] See ***69***.

[8] **persĕqui persĕvēro,** *I persist in pursuing.*

[9] See ***142***. [10] See ***125***.

[11] See ***126***.

[12] What answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.

[13] See ***86***.

[14] The Genitive and Ablative of **nēmo** are rare: these cases are supplied by **nullius** and **nullo** (from **nullus, *24***).

[15] See ***134***.

LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

144. Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference. A. & G. **54**, 6, *e*: A. & S. **256**, REM. 16: B. **262**, RULE XLVII.: B. & M. ***929***: G. **400**: H. **418**.

144, a. Ablative of Quality. A. & G. **54**, 7, *a*: A. & S. **211**, REM. 6: B. **263**, RULE XLVIII.: B. & M. ***888***: G. **402**: H. **428**. This is called sometimes *the Ablative of Characteristic*, sometimes *the Descriptive Ablative.*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Altĕrum ĭter multo (*144*) expĕdītius ĕrat,** *the other route was* MUCH *more passable.*
2. **Mātūrius paulo (*144*) dŏmum contendit,** *he hastens home* A LITTLE *sooner.*
3. **Ipsum Dumnŏrīgem, summā audāciā (*144, a*),** *Dumnorix himself,* (a man) OF THE GREATEST BOLDNESS.
4. **Summa hūmānĭtāte (*144, a*) ădŏlescens,** *a youth* OF THE HIGHEST CULTURE.

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multo grăvius quĕritŭr.[1] 2. Multo mājor ălacrĭtas exercĭtui[2] injecta est. 3. Altĕrum ĭter pĕr prōvinciam nostram ĕrat, multo făcĭlius atquĕ expĕdītius, proptĕreā quŏd intĕr fīnes Helvētiōrum ĕt Allobrŏgum, qui nūpĕr pācāti ĕrant, Rhŏdănus fluit. 4. Caesar ūnā aestāte[3] duōbus maxĭmis bellis[4] confectis mātūrius paulo, quăm tempus anni postŭlābat, ĭn hīberna ĭn[5] Sēquănos exercĭtum dēduxit. 5. Post ējus mortem nĭhĭlo mĭnus Helvētii id, quŏd constĭtuĕrant,[6] făcĕre cōnantur, ŭt ē fīnĭbus suis exeant.[7] 6. Rĕlĭquum spătium mons contĭnet magnā altĭtūdĭne, ĭtă, ŭt rādīces[8] montis ex utrāque parte[9] rīpae[10] flūmĭnis contingant.[11] 7. Galli ingenti magnĭtūdĭne corpŏrum Germānos,[12] incrēdĭbĭli virtūte atquĕ exercĭtātiōne ĭn armis essĕ[13] praedĭcābant. 8. Commŏdissĭmum vīsum est[14] Cāium Vălĕrium Procillum, summā virtūte ĕt hūmānĭtāte ădŏlescentem, ăd eum mittĕre. 9. Rĕpĕrit ipsum esse Dumnŏrĭgem, summā audācīā, magnā ăpŭd plēbem proptĕr lĭbĕrālĭtātem grātiā, cŭpĭdum[15] rērum[16] nŏvārum.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely. 2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers. 3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among[5] the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded. 5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do). 6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor. 7. We have seen mountains of great height. 8. It seemed[14] most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

Notes.

[1] See *103.* [2] See *67.*

[3] See *111.* [4] See *122.*

[5] **in**, *among.* [6] **constituĕrant**, sc. **făcĕre.**

[7] **ŭt — exeant** is an appositive to **id**; for the mood, see *139*; translate, *to go forth.*

[8] See *34.* [9] **ex utrāque parte**, *on each side.*

[10] See *32.* [11] See *139.*

[12] See *53.* [13] See *52.*

[14] What is the subject of **visum est**? (*129*)

[15] See *64.* [16] See *140.*

LESSON LXXIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. 61, 2: A. & S. 263, 2: B. 292, *e*, RULE LVI.; 303, *d*, RULE LXIV.: B. & M. *1281-1284:* G. 605-609: H. 514; 515, I.-III.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quŭm pugnātum sit,** *although they fought;* lit., *it was fought.*
2. **Lĭcĕt victōriā glōrĭētur,** *although he glories in victory.*
3. **Quamvīs cărēret nōmĭne,** *although he was without the name.*
4. **Etsī vĭdēbat, tămĕn nōn pŭtābat,** *although he saw, yet he did not think.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quŭm fortĭtĕr pugnent, tămĕn nōn vincent. 2. Quŭm Sēquănī Rōmānis[1] sătisfēcĕrint, tămĕn lēgātus pācem cŭm iis nōn făcit. 3. Quŭm ea[2] ĭtă sint, tămĕn, sī obsĭdes ăb iis sĭbi dentur,[3] cŭm iis pācem făciat.[3] 4. Năm hoc tōto proelio,[4] quŭm ăb hōra septĭma ăd vespĕrum pugnātum sit,[5] āversum hostem vĭdēre nēmo pŏtuit. 5. Lĭcet[6] me hortētur, nōn pugnābo. 6. Lĭcet mīles vulnĕrātus sit, tămĕn laetātur. 7. Lĭ-

cet Helvētii sua victōria[7] glōrientur, tămĕn ĭter făcient nōn pĕr nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignĭtāte[8] rēgia, quamvīs cărēret nōmĭne.[9] 9. Quamvīs sint sŭb ăqua, sŭb ăqua măllĕdīcĕre tentant. 10. Caesar, etsī prŏpĕ exacta jăm aestas ĕrat, tămĕn eō[10] exercĭtum adduxit. 11. Năm etsī sĭnĕ ullō pĕrĭcŭlo lĕgiōnis[11] dēlectae cŭm ĕquĭtātu proelium fŏre[12] vĭdēbat, tămĕn committendum[13] nōn pŭtābat. 12. Ită dies circĭtĕr quindĕcĭm ĭter fēcērunt, ŭtī intĕr nŏvissĭmum hostium agmen ĕt nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnis[14] aut sēnis mīlĭbus[15] passuum intĕresset.[16]

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer. 2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with them. 3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they fought from the fifth hour till sunset. 4. We cannot see the mountain, although it is of great height.[8] 5. The lieutenant did not lead his army into winter-quarters, although the summer was almost gone. 6. He thinks that he ought to begin[13] battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to the legions.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See *132*. [2] See Ln. LVIII., Note 13.

[3] See Ln. LXXVII., Ex. 4. What is the force of this conditional clause? (*143*)

[4] See *111*. [5] See Ex. 1.

[6] **lĭcĕt** is properly an Impersonal Verb (*128*), Present Tense, with **ŭt** (*that*) omitted; hence it is followed only by the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive. (*135*) What is the literal translation?

[7] See *79*. [8] See *144, a*.

[9] See Ex. 3. [10] **eō**, *thither*.

[11] A. & G. **217**: A. & S. **211**, Rem. 2, *last part*: B. **233**, Rule XXII.: B. & M. *746*: G. **361**, 2: H. **396**, II.

[12] **fŏre** = **fŭtūrum essĕ**. (*62*)

[13] **committendum**, sc. **essĕ**; see *130*.

[14] **quīnis**, etc., *than five*, etc. *each day*.

[15] See *133*. [16] See *139*.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

146. Ablative of Price. A. & G. **54**, 8 : A. & S. **252** : B. **258**, RULE XLIII., *c*: B. & M. ***884:*** G. **404** : H. **416**. This answers such questions as *For how much? At what price?*

147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. **55**, 2, *b* : A. & S. **236** : B. **262**, RULE XLVII. : B. & M. ***958:*** G. **335**, REMARK 1 : H. **378**, 2. This answers the question, *How far?*

148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. **54**, 3, *a* : A. & S. **244** : B. **261**, RULE XLVI., *a* : B. & M. ***919:*** G. **373**, REMARKS 1–4 : H. **419**, IV.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dŏmum duōbus tălentis (*146*) ēmit,** *he bought a house* FOR TWO TALENTS.
2. **Oppĭdum parvo prĕtio (*146*) vendĭdit,** *he sold the town* AT A SMALL PRICE.
3. **Mīlĭbus (*147*) passuum quattuor ĕt vīgintī absunt,** *they are* TWENTY-FOUR MILES *distant.*
4. **Dignus est mājōrĭbus (*148*),** *he is worthy* OF (his) ANCESTORS.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic[1] mercēde puĕros ĕt puellas dŏcet. 2. Vīgintī tălentis ūnam ōrātiōnem Isocrătes vendĭdit. 3. Vendĭdit hic auro patriam. 4. Victōria nōbis[2] multo sanguĭne stĕtit.[3] 5. Vĕreor nē victōria iis multo sanguĭne stet.[4] 6. Quŭm Rōmāni vīcĕrint,[5] tămĕn victōria iis multo sanguĭne stĕtit. 7. Septĭmo die ăb explōrātōrĭbus certior factus[6] est Ariovisti cōpias[7] ā nostris[8] mīlĭbus passuum quattuor ĕt vīgintī ăbesse.[9] 8. Hic lŏcus aequo fĕrē spătio ăb castris Ariovisti ĕt Caesăris ăbĕrat. 9. Lĕgiōnem Caesar, quăm ĕquis[10] dēvexĕrat, passibus dŭcentis ăb eo tŭmŭlo constĭtuit. 10. Itĕm ĕquĭtes

Ariovisti pări intervallo constĭtērunt.[11] 11. Eōdem die castra prōmōvit ĕt mīlĭbus passuum sex ā Caesăris castris sŭb monte consēdit. 12. Hī pueri patrĭbus indigni sunt. 13. Hic impĕrātor immortālĭtāte dignus est. 14. Lĭcĕt[12] hī mīlĭtes fortissĭmi sint, tămĕn mājōrĭbus indigni sunt. 15. Puĕrum hortēmur ŭt mājōrĭbus dignus sit.[13] 16. Nulla vox est ăb iis audīta pŏpŭli Rōmāni mājestāte ĕt sŭpĕrĭōrĭbus victōriis indigna.

Write in Latin.

1. This man[1] will teach for wages. 2. I shall sell my house at a small price. 3. He is by no means rich, although he sells[5] houses at a large price. 4. I fear that I shall not sell[4] my house at a large price. 5. We are about fifteen miles from the city. 6. We shall station the third legion three hundred paces from the hill. 7. He will station his cavalry at nearly an equal distance from the same place. 8. We shall move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva. 9. I fear that these girls are not worthy of their mother. 10. Let us urge the soldiers to be[13] worthy of their country.

Notes.

[1] See Ln. LVIII., Note 13. [2] See ***39***.
[3] See Gen. Vy. under **stō**. [4] See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.
[5] See ***145***. [6] See Ln. LXVIII., Ex. 2.
[7] See ***53***. [8] Sc. **cōpiis**.
[9] **ăbessĕ** depends upon the idea of saying contained in **ab — factus est**, *he was informed by scouts that*, etc., i. e. who said that, etc.
[10] **ĕquis**, *on horseback;* see ***54***. [11] See **consistō**, Gen. Vy.
[12] See Ln. LXXIX., Note 6. [13] See ***136***.

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. **62**, 2, *e*; **63**, 1–4: A. & S. **263**, 5; **264**, 8; **266**, 3: B. **302**, RULE LXIII.: B. & M. ***1250; 1251; 1255:*** G. **538–541**; **587**; **636**: H. **518**, I., II.; **519**, 1; **520**, I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quŭm impĕtus sustinēre nōn possent, altĕri sē ĭn montem rĕcēpērunt,** *since they could not withstand the attacks, one party withdrew upon the mountain.*
2. **Caesar injūrĭam făcĭēbat qui vectīgālia dētĕrĭōra făcĕret,** *Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues decrease.*
3. **Aedui questi sunt quŏd Harūdes fīnes eōrum pŏpŭlārentur,** *the Aedui complained because* (as they said) *the Harudes were laying waste their territory.*
4. **Quŏd ā Bibracte ăbĕrat, rei frūmentārĭae prospĭciendum existīmāvit,** *because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought that he must look out for supplies.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfăcĭle est, quŭm virtūte[1] omnĭbus praestētis, tōtīus Galliae impĕrio[2] pŏtīri.[3] 2. Orgĕtŏrix dixit perfăcĭle essĕ, quŭm virtūte omnĭbus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae impĕrio potīri. 3. Quŭm magna ex parte[4] eōrum prĕcĭbus[5] adductus bellum suscēpĕrit, quĕrĭtur. 4. Caesări quŭm id nunciātum esset, mātūrat ăb urbe prŏfĭcisci. 5. Diūtius[6] quŭm nostrōrum[7] impĕtus sustĭnēre nōn possent, altĕri sē, ŭt coepĕrant,[8] ĭn montem rĕcēpērunt, altĕri ăd impĕdīmenta ĕt carros suos sē contŭlērunt. 6. In fīnes Lingŏnum die quarto pervēnērunt quŭm propter vulnĕra mīlĭtum nostri trīduum mŏrāti eos sĕqui nōn pŏtuissent. 7. Ariovistus dixit magnam Caesărem

injūriam făcĕre qui suo adventu vectīgālia dētĕriōra[9] făcĕret. 8. Grăvĭtĕr eos accūsat quŏd ăb iis nōn sublĕvētur. 9. Multo[10] ĕtiăm grăvius quŏd sit destĭtūtus quĕrĭtur. 10. Proptĕr frīgŏra, quŏd Gallia sŭb septemtriōnĭbus pŏsĭta est,[11] frūmenta ĭn agris mātūra nōn ĕrant. 11. Eo autĕm frūmento,[2] quŏd[12] flūmĭne Arăre nāvĭbus[13] subvexĕrat, proptĕreā mĭnus ūti[14] pŏtĕrat, quŏd ĭter ăb Arăre Helvētii āvertĕrant, ā quĭbus discēdĕre nōlēbat.[15] 12. Quŏd ā Bibracte, oppĭdo Aeduōrum longē maxĭmo ĕt copiōsissĭmo, nōn amplius mīlĭbus[16] passuum octōdĕcim ăbĕrat, rei frūmentāriae prospĭciendum[17] existĭmavit: ĭter ăb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte[18] īre contendit.

Write in Latin.

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy to get possession of their government. 2. Since they fight more bravely than the Gauls[19] they will easily conquer. 3. We are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks. 4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy, one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself to the baggage. 5. He complained because (as he said) he could not use the corn. 6. He complains because (as he says) he has sold his house at a small price.[20] 7. Because Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great. 8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset,[21] because we are not more than twenty miles distant.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See *124.*

[2] See *104.*

[3] See *129.*

[4] **magna ex parte**, *in great part.*

[5] See *79.*

[6] **Diūtius** modifies **sustĭnēre.**

[7] The *Possessive Pronouns*, like the Demonstrative, are often used substantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

[8] What kind of a verb is **coepĕrant**? (*127*)

[9] See EXAMPLE 2.

[10] See *144.*

[11] Of what does **quŏd — pŏsĭta est** express the cause?
[12] See ***115*** and ***34***.
[13] See ***54***.
[14] See ***69***.
[15] See ***125***.
[16] See ***133***.
[17] See EXAMPLE 4.
[18] See ***105***.
[19] *Than the Gauls,* **quam Galli.**
[20] See ***146***.
[21] See ***111***.

LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. **62**, 2, *b* – *d*: A. & S. **263**, 3 – 5, REM. 2: B. **292**, *d*, 1 – 3, RULE LVI.; **304**, 1 – 3, RULE LXV.: B. & M. ***1237; 1238; 1241; 1244:*** G. **570**; **571**; **574**; **576**; **579**; **580**; **581**: H. **518**, II., 1; **522**, I., II.; **523**, I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quŭm lēgāti mittĕrentur, Ariovistus postŭlāvit,** *when ambassadors were sent, Ariovistus demanded.*
2. **Priusquăm quidquăm cōnārētur Divitĭăcum vŏcat,**[1] *before he attempted anything he summoned Divitiacus.*
3. **Dŭm haec gĕruntur Caesări nunciātum est,** *while these things were taking place it was reported to Caesar.*
4. **Nōn exspectandum sĭbi stătuit dŭm pervĕnīrent,** *he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Diū quŭm esset pugnātum, impĕdīmentis castrisque[2] nostri[3] pŏtīti sunt. 2. Quŭm trīdui viam[4] prōcessisset, nunciātum est[5] ei Ariovistum cŭm suis omnĭbus cōpiis contendĕre. 3. Hic pāgus ūnus, quŭm dŏmo[6] exisset patrum nostrōrum mĕmŏrīā,[7] Lucium Cassium consŭlem interfēcĕrat ĕt ējus exercĭtum sŭb jŭgum mīsĕrat. 4. Quŭm[20] hostium ăcies ā sĭnistro cornu[8] pulsă[9] atquĕ ĭn fŭgam conversa esset, ā dextro

cornu vĕhĕmentĕr multĭtūdĭne suōrum[8] nostram ăciem prēmēbant. 5. Ităquĕ priusquam quidquăm cōnārētur Divitiăcum ăd sē vŏcāri jŭbet.[1] 6. Postquăm ĭd ănĭmum advertit cōpias suas Caesar ĭn proxĭmum collem subdūcit. 7. Eō postquăm Caesar pervēnit obsĭdes, arma, servōs[10] pŏposcit. 8. Dŭm haec ĭn collŏquio gĕruntur,[11] Caesări nunciātum est[5] ĕquĭtes Ariovisti lăpĭdes tēlăquĕ[12] ĭn nostros conjĭcĕre. 9. Tămĕn, ŭt spătium intercēdĕre posset, dŭm mīlĭtes, quos[13] impĕrāvĕrat, convēnīrent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ăd dēlībĕrandum[14] sumptūrum.[15] 10. Quĭbus[16] rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum[17] sĭbi stătuit, dŭm, omnĭbus fortūnis[18] sociōrum consumptis, ĭn Santŏnos Helvētii pervĕnīrent.

Write in Latin.

1. When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded corn of them.[19] 2. When they had proceeded a three days' march,[4] they pitched (their) camp. 3. Before they attempted to set out they summoned a council. 4. After the general arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons, and[10] horses. 5. Although we had routed the enemy's line on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon us. 6. While the troops are assembling we are waiting. 7. We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble. 8. Influenced by these[16] affairs, we decided that we ought[17] not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

Notes.

[1] See A. & G. **58**, 2, *d*: A. & S. **145**, I., 3: B. **58**: B. & M. *1089*: G. **220**: H. **467**, III.

[2] See Ln. XXIII., Note 2.

[3] See Ln. LXXXI., Note 7.

[4] See *109*.

[5] What is the subject of **nunciātum est**? (*129*)

[6] See *107*.

[7] See *111*.

[8] **a sĭnistro cornu**, *on the left wing*.

[9] **pulsa**, sc. **esset**.

[10] When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it: e. g. either **obsĭdes, arma, servos**; or **obsĭdes et arma et servos**; NOT **obsĭdes, arma et servos.**

[11] A. & G. **58**, 2, *e*: A. & S. **259**, (1.), (*c*.): G. **220**, REMARK: H. **467**, 4.

[12] An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached: **tēlăque.**

[13] Sc. **convenire.** [14] **ad dēlĭbĕrandum**, *for deliberating.*

[15] **sumptūrum**, sc. **essĕ.**

[16] The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative: **quae res**, THESE *affairs.*

[17] **exspectandum**, sc. **essĕ.** See ***130*** and ***131***

[18] See ***122.*** [19] See ***71*** and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[20] See ***145.***

LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. **67**, 2 and REMARK: A. & S. **265** and NOTE 2: B. **294**, *a*, RULE LVII.: B. & M. ***1182***: G. **454**; **469**: H. **524**; **525.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quid sui consĭlĭi[1] sit ostendit**, *he shows what his plan is.*
2. **Causa quae esset quaesiit**, *he asked what the cause was.*
3. **Arioviisto mīrum vīsum est quid ĭn Gallia Caesări nĕgōti[1] esset**, *Ariovistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quālis esset nātūra montis, qui[2] cognoscĕrent,[3] mīsit. 2. Dīcit intellĭgĕre sēsē quanto ĭd cŭm pĕrīcŭlo fēcĕrit. 3. Ex quo jūdĭcāri pŏtest,[4] quantum hăbeat ĭn sē bŏni[1] constantia. 4. Dumnŏrĭgi custōdes pōnit,[5] ŭt, quae ăgat, quĭbuscŭm[6] lŏquātur, scīre possit. 5. Ariovistus dixit sĭbi mīrum vĭdēri,[7] quid ĭn sua Gallia, quăm bello[8] vīcisset,[9] aut Caesări[10]

aut omnīno pŏpŭlo Rōmāno[10] nĕgōti[1] esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod pĕr fīnes Aeduōrum ĕt Sēquănōrum ĭn Rhŏdănum influit incrēdĭbĭli lēnĭtāte, ĭtă ŭt ocŭlis, ĭn utram partem[11] fluat, jūdĭcāri nōn possit. 7. Postero die castra ex eo lŏco mŏvent. Idĕm[12] făcit Caesar, ĕquĭtātumquĕ omnem, ăd nŭmĕrum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omni prōvincia ĕt Aeduis atquĕ eōrum sŏciis coactum hăbēbat,[13] praemittit, qui vĭdeant,[8] quas ĭn partes hostes ĭter făciant. 8. Caesar vĕhĕmentĕr eos incūsāvit quod, aut quăm ĭn partem aut quo consĭlio[14] dūcĕrentur,[15] sĭbi quaerendum[16] aut cōgĭtandum pŭtārent.[17] 9. Caesar dixit dē quarta vĭgĭlia sē castra mōtūrum, ŭt quăm prīmum intellĭgĕre posset, utrŭm ăpŭd eos pŭdor atquĕ offĭcium, ăn tĭmor vălēret. 10. Quŭm ex captīvis quaerĕret Caesar, quăm ŏb rem Ariovistus proelio[8] nōn dēcertāret, hanc rĕpĕriēbat causam.

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed. 2. We shall send (men) to ascertain[8] in what direction the river flows. 3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows. 4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled. 5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think[17] they ought to ask[16] in what direction they are to be led. 6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly. 7. We shall place guards over him,[5] that we may know with[6] whom he speaks. 8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

Notes and Questions.

[1] **quid sui consĭli**, *what his plan;* lit., *what of his plan.* See A. & G. **50, 2**: A. & S. **212**: B. **227**, RULE XVII.: B. & M. **771**: G. **366**; **371**: H. **396**, III.

[2] **qui**, sc. **vīros** as antecedent. [3] See ***136*** and Ex. 10.
[4] What is the subject of **pŏtest**?
[5] **Dumnŏrīgi — pōnit**, *he places guards over* (lit. for) *Dumnorix.*
[6] See Ln. LIX., Note 1.
[7] **sĭbi — vidēri**, *he wondered;* lit., *it seemed to him wonderful;* for **sĭbi**, see ***39***.
[8] **bello**, *in war;* see ***54***.
[9] **vicisset**, translate by the Indicative.
[10] See ***137***.
[11] **in utram partem**, *in which direction.*
[12] How does **īdem** differ in meaning from **ĭdem**?
[13] **coactum hăbēbat**, *he had collected.* A. & G. **292** *c.*
[14] See ***79***. [15] **dūcĕrentur**, *they were to be led.*
[16] **quaerendum**, sc. **essĕ**: see ***130***. [17] See ***149*** and Ex. 3.

LESSON LXXXIV.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. **67**, Remark, and 1: A. & S. **266**, Note, and 2: B. **316**; **317**, Rule LXXIV.: B. & M. ***1295***; ***1296***: G. **651**–**653**: H. **528**; **530**, I., II.; **531**.

EXAMPLE.

Orātio Recta, *Direct Discourse.*	**Orātio Oblīqua**, *Indirect Discourse.*
Ob eam rem ex cīvĭtāte prŏfūg***ī*** ĕt Rōmam vēn***ī***, quŏd nĕquĕ jūrejūrando nĕquĕ obsĭdĭbus tĕnē***bar***.	*Lŏcūtus est Divitĭăcus:* ŏb eam rem ***sē*** ex cīvĭtāte prŏfūg***isse*** ĕt Rōmam vēn***isse***, quŏd nĕquĕ jūrejūrando nĕquĕ obsĭdĭbus tĕnē***rētur***.
I fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because ***I*** was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.	*Divitiacus said:* ***he*** fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because ***he*** was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.

Analyze and parse.

1. Dīvĭco rĕspondit: Ită Helvētios ā mājōrĭbus suis instĭtūtos esse, ŭtī obsĭdes accĭpĕre,[1] nōn dăre consuērint[2]; ējus rei pŏpŭlum Rōmānum essĕ testem. 2. Lēgāti dixērunt sēsē hăbēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu ăb eo pĕtĕre vellent. 3. Lŏcūtus est prō his Divitiăcus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnes essĕ duas: hārum[3] altĕrius[4] princĭpātum tĕnēre Aeduos, altĕrius Arvernos. 4. Dixit hōrum[3] prīmo circĭtĕr mīlia quindĕcĭm Rhēnum transisse: posteāquăm agros ĕt cultum ĕt cōpias[5] Gallōrum hŏmĭnes fĕri āc barbări ădămassent, trāductos[6] plūres:[11] nunc essĕ ĭn Gallia ăd centŭm ĕt vīgintī mīlium nŭmĕrum. 5. Dixit cŭm his Aeduos eōrumquĕ clientes sĕmĕl atquĕ ĭtĕrŭm armis[7] contendisse; magnam călămĭtātem pulsos[8] accēpisse, omnem nōbĭlĭtātem, omnem sĕnātum, omnem ĕquĭtātum[9] āmīsisse. 6. Animadvertit Caesar ūnos ex omnĭbus Sēquănos nĭhĭl eārum rērum[3] făcĕre, quas cētĕri făcĕrent, sĕd tristes căpĭte[10] dēmisso terram intuēri.

Notes.

[1] See *69*.
[2] See *139* and Ln. LXXV., Note 11.
[3] See Ln. LXXXIII., Note 1.
[4] **altĕrius** modifies **factiōnis** understood.
[5] **cōpias**, *wealth*.
[6] **trāductos**, sc. **essĕ**.
[7] See *54*.
[8] See **pello**.
[9] See Ln. LXXXII., Note 10.
[10] See *122*.
[11] **plus** is declined as follows:

		N.		*M. and F.*	*N.*
Sing.	*Nom.*	plūs,	Plur.	plūres,	plūra,
	Gen.	plūris,		plūrium,	plūrium,
	Dat.	———		plūrĭbus,	plūrĭbus,
	Acc.	plūs,		plūres,	plūra,
	Abl.	———		plūrĭbus,	plūrĭbus.

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.

Sī pācem pŏpŭlus Rōmānus cŭm Helvētiis făc***iet***, ĭn eam partem ***ībunt*** atquĕ ĭbi ***ĕrunt*** Helvēti***i***, ŭbi eos ***tu*** constĭtu***ĕris*** atquĕ esse vŏlu***ĕris***; sīn bello persĕqui persĕvērā***bis***, rĕmĭnisc***ĕre*** ĕt vĕtĕris incommŏdi pŏpŭli Rōmāni ĕt pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

If the Roman people ***shall*** make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii ***will*** go into that part and stay where ***you shall*** have determined and wished that they should be; but if ***you shall*** persist in continuing war, recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Indirect Discourse.

Is ĭtă cŭm Caesăre ĕgit: Sī pācem pŏpŭlus Rōmānus cŭm Helvētiis făc***ĕret***, ĭn eam partem ***ītūros*** atquĕ ĭbi ***fŭtūros*** Helvēti***os***, ŭbi eos ***Caesar*** constĭtu***isset*** atquĕ esse vŏlu***isset***; sīn bello persĕqui persĕvērā***ret***, rĕmĭnisc***ĕrētur*** ĕt vĕtĕris incommŏdi pŏpŭli Rōmāni ĕt pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

He treated with Caesar as follows: If the Roman people ***should*** make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii ***would*** go into that part and stay where ***Caesar should*** have determined and wished that they should be; but if ***he should*** persist in continuing war, ***let him*** recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa[1] praedĭcāvit: Transisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte,[2] sĕd rŏgātum[3] ĕt arcessītum[3] ā Gallis; nōn sĭnĕ magna spe magnĭsquĕ praemiis dŏmum prŏpinquosquĕ rĕlīquisse: sēdes hăbēre[4] ĭn Gallia ăb ipsis[5] concessas,[6] obsĭdes ipsōrum[6] vŏluntāte[2] dătos; stīpendium căpĕre[4] jūre[7] belli,

quod[8] victōres victis[9] impōnĕre consuērint.[10] 2. His Caesar ĭtă respondit: Eo[11] sĭbi mĭnŭs dŭbĭtātiōnis[12] dări, quŏd eas res, quas lēgāti Helvētii commĕmŏrassent,[10] mĕmŏriā[21] tĕnēret, atquĕ eo[13] grăvius ferre, quo[13] mĭnŭs mĕrĭto[7] pŏpŭli Rōmāni accĭdissent: qui si[14] alĭcūjus injūriae[15] sĭbi[16] conscius fuisset, nōn fuisse diffĭcĭle căvēre[17]; sed eo[11] dēceptum,[18] quod nĕque commissum[19] a se intellĭgĕret, quāre tĭmēret, nĕque sine causa tĭmendum[20] pŭtāret.

Notes.

[1] A. & G. **47, 3**: A. & S. **205,** Rem. 7, (2): B. **269**: B. & M. *658*: G. **195,** Remark 2: H. **441.**

[2] See *79.*

[3] See *121* and Exs. 3 and 4.

[4] **hăbĕre, capĕre,** sc. **sē.**

[5] **ipsis,** sc. **Gallis.**

[6] **concessas,** from **concēdo**; **ipsōrum,** *their own.*

[7] The *Ablative of Cause* often designates that *in accordance with* which anything is done: **jūre,** *in accordance with the law.*

[8] See *115.*

[9] A. & G. **47, 3**: A. & S. **205,** Rem. 7: B. **269**: B. & M. *658*: G. **195,** Remark 1: H. **441, 1**; this rule includes Participles and Pronouns: for the *case* of **victis,** see *67.*

[10] See Ln. LXXV., Note 11.

[11] **eo,** *for this reason.*

[12] See Ln. LXXXIII., Note 1.

[13] See Gen. Vy. under **eo.**

[14] **qui si,** *if they.*

[15] See *140.*

[16] See *86*; translate, *on their part.*

[17] See *129.*

[18] **dēceptum,** sc. **essĕ sē.**

[19] **commissum,** sc. **essĕ ălĭquid.**

[20] **tĭmendum,** sc. **sĭbi essĕ,** and see *130.*

[21] See *54.*

LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar replies: The Romans have been so trained up by their fathers that they do not give[1] hostages. 2. He in-

forms Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many[2] (things): (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because[3] we had been invited[3] by the Sequani; we did not set out from home[4] without great rewards; we have among the Helvētii large possessions, granted to us with their own[5] consent;[6] we levied tribute on the conquered[7] in accordance with the law[8] of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind; that you had been deceived for this reason,[9] that[10] you had neither done anything for which[11] you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear[12] without a reason.

Notes.

[1] See ***139***.
[2] See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.
[3] See ***121*** and EX. 3.
[4] See ***107***.
[5] *their own*, **ipsōrum**.
[6] See ***79***.
[7] See ***67*** and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.
[8] See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.
[9] *for this reason*, **eo**.
[10] *that*, **quŏd**.
[11] *for which*, **quārĕ**.
[12] See ***130*** and ***131***.

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. The Gerund. A. & G. **73**, 1: A. & S. **275**, I.: B. **324**: B. & M. ***1319***; ***1321***: G. **426**; **427**: H. **559**; **560**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hostĭbus pugnandi pŏtestātem fēcit**, *he gave the enemy an opportunity* FOR FIGHTING.

2. **Bellandi cŭpĭdi,** *fond* OF CARRYING ON WAR.
3. **Diem ăd dēlĭbĕrandum sūmet,** *he will take a day for* DELIBERATING.
4. **Rĕpĕrīebat ĭn quaerendo,** *he found on* INQUIRING.
5. **Stŭdium pugnandi,** *a desire* FOR FIGHTING.

Analyze and parse.[1]

1. Qua dē causa hŏmĭnes bellandi[2] cŭpĭdi magno dŏlōre[3] affĭcĭēbantur. 2. His rēbus adducti ĕt auctōrĭtāte Orgētŏrĭgis permōti, constĭtuērunt ea, quae ăd prŏfĭcĭscendum pertĭnērent,[4] compărāre. 3. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ăd dēlĭbĕrandum sumptūrum.[5] 4. Rĕpĕrĭēbat ĭn quaerendo Caesar ĭnĭtium ējus fŭgae factum[5] ā Dumnŏrĭge atquĕ ējus ĕquĭtĭbus. 5. Caesar Divitiăcum consōlātus rŏgat, fīnem ōrandi făciat.[6] 6. Ariovistus, quŭm nĕquĕ ădĭtum nĕquĕ causam postŭlandi justam hăbĕret,[7] lĭbĕrālĭtāte[8] sĕnātus ea praemia consĕcūtus est. 7. Caesar lŏquendi fīnem făcit sēquĕ ăd suos[9] rĕcĭpit, suisquĕ impĕrāvit nē quod[10] omnĭno tēlum ĭn hostes rējĭcĕrent. 8. Multo[11] mājor ălacrĭtas stŭdiumquĕ pugnandi mājus exercĭtui injectum est. 9. Proxĭmo die Caesar ăciem instruxit hostĭbusquĕ[12] pugnandi pŏtestātem fēcit.[13] 10. Ită nostri[9] acrĭtĕr ĭn hostes signo[14] dăto impĕtum fēcērunt, ŭt spătium pīla ĭn hostĕs conjĭciendi nōn dărētur.[15]

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war. 2. We shall take ten days for deliberating. 3. We shall ask them to make[6] an end of entreating. 4. A much greater desire for carrying on war was infused into all of us.[16] 5. They gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them. 6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace and friendship with us. 7. You will find on inquiring (that) we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns. 8. They

said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep the enemy from their cities. 9. We made an end of speaking and betook ourselves to our (friends). 10. Although we had no just cause for asking, we obtained many things[17] by reason of your generosity.[8]

Notes.

[1] Parse the Gerunds like nouns. [2] See ***140.***

[3] A. & G. **54**, 7, *b*: A. & S. **247**, 2: B. **259**, RULE XLIV.: B. & M. ***873***: G. **401**: H. **414**, 3.

[4] A. & G. **65**, 2: A. & S. **264**, 1, (*a.*): B. **301**: B. & M. ***1218***: G. **633**: H. **500**, 2, *second part.*

[5] **essĕ** is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.

[6] See ***136*** and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3; **ŭt**, as here, is sometimes omitted.

[7] See ***145.*** [8] See ***79.***

[9] See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. [10] See ***116,*** *second part.*

[11] See ***144.*** [12] See ***39.***

[13] See EXAMPLE 1. [14] See ***122*** and EX. 2, *b.*

[15] See ***139.*** [16] *all of us,* **omnĭbus nōbis**; see ***67.***

[17] See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. The Gerundive. A. & G. **73**, 2: A. & S. **275**, II.: B. **325**, RULE LXXVI.: B. & M. ***1322***: G. **428**: H. **562.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad mĭnuendam grātiam,** *for* DIMINISHING *popularity.*
2. **Ad eas res conficiendas Orgĕtŏrix dēlĭgĭtur,** *Orgetorix is chosen to* EXECUTE *these plans.*
3. **Spem regni obtĭnendi,** *the hope* OF OBTAINING *the sovereignty.*
4. **Dătā făcultāte ītĭnĕris făciendi,** *if an opportunity for marching should be granted.*

Analyze, and parse.

1. Quĭbus ŏpĭbus[1] āc nervis nōn sōlum ăd mĭnuendam[2] grātiam,[3] sĕd paenĕ ăd pernĭciem suam ūtĕrētur.[4] 2. Ipse ĭn cĭtĕrĭōrem Galliam ăd conventus ăgendos prŏfectus est. 3. Ad eas res confĭciendas biennium sĭbi sătĭs essĕ duxērunt. 4. In Gallia ăb his, qui ăd condūcendos hŏmĭnes făcultātes hăbēbant, regna occŭpābantur. 5. Ea, quae ăd effēmĭnandos ănĭmos pertĭnent, important. 6. Dĕcĭma lĕgio sē essĕ ăd bellum gĕrendum părātissĭmam confirmāvit. 7. Ariovistus dixit omnes Galliae cīvĭtātes ăd sē oppugnandum vēnisse. 8. Frūmentum omne, praeterquăm quod sēcum portātūri ĕrant,[5] combūrunt, ŭt dŏmŭm[6] rĕdĭtiōnis spe[7] sublāta[8] părātiōres ăd omnia pĕrīcŭla sŭbeunda essent. 9. Liscus dīcit sī quid accĭdat[9] Rōmānis, summam ĭn spem[10] pĕr Helvētios regni obtĭnendi Dumnŏrĭgem vĕnīre. 10. Hac ōrātiōne hăbĭtā[11] summa ălacrĭtas ĕt cŭpĭdĭtas belli gĕrendi innāta est. 11. Nĕquĕ hŏmĭnes ĭnĭmīco ănĭmo,[12] dătā făcultāte pĕr prōvinciam ĭtĭnĕris făciendī, tempĕrātūros[13] ăb injūria ĕt mălĕfĭcio existimāvit. 12. Hoc proelio facto rĕlĭquas cōpias Helvētiōrum ŭt consĕqui posset,[14] pontem ĭn Arăre făciendum cūrat[15] atquĕ ĭtă exercĭtum trādūcit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men. 2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city. 3. We entertain[10] the highest hope of establishing friendship with all. 4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls if anything happens[9] to us. 5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans. 6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix. 7. Let us not import[16] those things which tend to enervate the mind. 8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace

with all men. 9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come to attack him. 10. We shall burn up our villages, that we may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

[1] See ***104.***

[2] Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like adjectives.

[3] **grātiam,** sc. **suam.**

[4] **ūtĕrētur,** translate by the Indicative.

[5] See LN. LXX., Ex. 2.

[6] See ***105;*** **dŏmum** limits the idea of *motion* in the verbal noun **rĕdĭtiōnis.**

[7] See ***122.*** [8] From **tollo.**

[9] **accĭdat,** translate by the Indicative; why is it in the Subjunctive? (***152***)

[10] **in spem vĕnio,** *I entertain the hope.*

[11] See LN. LXIV., NOTE 2. [12] See ***144, a.***

[13] See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5. [14] See ***136.***

[15] **pontem — curat,** *he attends to building a bridge over the Saône;* lit., *he cares for a bridge to be built,* etc. How is *Saône* pronounced?

[16] See ***134.***

LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155. The Supine. A. & G. **74,** 1–2: A. & S. **276,** I.–III.: B. **326,** RULES LXXVII. and LXXVIII.: B. & M. ***1360; 1365:*** G. **435–437:** H. **567–570.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Lēgātos mittunt rŏgātŭm auxĭlium,** *they send legates* TO ASK FOR *aid.*
2. **Perfăcĭle factū,** *very easy* TO DO.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aedui, quŭm sē suăquĕ[1] ăb iis dēfendĕre nōn possent,[2] lēgātos ăd Caesărem mittunt rŏgātŭm auxĭlium. 2. Bello Helvētiōrum confecto tōtīus fĕrē Galliae lēgāti, princĭpes[3] cīvĭtātum, ăd Caesărem grātŭlātŭm convēnērunt. 3. Lēgāti ăb Aeduis ĕt ā Trēvĭris vĕniēbant; Aedui[4] questŭm quŏd Harūdes, qui nūpĕr. ĭn Galliam transportāti essent,[5] fīnes eōrum pŏpŭlārentur[2]; sēsē nē obsĭdĭbus quĭdĕm dătis pācem Ariovisti rĕdĭmĕre pŏtuisse. 4. Divitiăcus dixit ŏb eam rem sē ex cīvĭtāte prōfūgisse ĕt Rōmam[6] ăd sĕnātum vēnisse auxĭlium postŭlātŭm, quŏd sōlus nĕquĕ jūrejūrando nĕquĕ obsĭdĭbus tĕnērētur. 5. Liscus dīcit Dumnŏrĭgem ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem hăbēre, sŏrōrem ex matre[7] ĕt prŏpinquas suas nuptŭm ĭn ălias cīvĭtātes collŏcasse. 6. Hostis[8] est uxor invīta[9] quae ăd vīrum nuptŭm dătur. 7. Perfăcĭle factū essĕ illis prŏbat cōnāta perfĭcĕre, proptĕreā quŏd ipse suae cīvĭtātis impĕrium obtentūrus esset.[10]

Write in Latin.

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops. 2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid. 3. Since we cannot[2] defend ourselves and our possessions[11] from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva[6] to ask for aid. 4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them). 5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him). 6. Ambassadors came from all the states; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed[2] the Rhine to attack[12] their towns; (saying that) not even after a pledge[13] had been given were they able to establish peace. 7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do. 8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

Notes.

[1] See A. & G. 4, 2, *c*: A. & S. 15, 2: B. 24, Exc. 3: B. & M. *21*: G. 14, Remark 1: H. 25, 3, 1).

[2] See *149*.

[3] See *25*.

[4] **Aedui**, sc. **vĕnĭĕbant**.

[5] See A. & G. 342: A. & S. 266: B. 310, Rule LXIX.: B. & M. *1291*: G. 666: H. 527.

[6] See *105*.

[7] **sŏrŏrem ex matre**, *his half-sister*.

[8] See *64*.

[9] **invīta**, *against her will*; it modifies **quae**.

[10] See Ln. LXX. and *149*.

[11] See Ln. LXXXV., Note 1.

[12] See *155*.

[13] See *122*.

LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. 84, 1–3, *a–e*: A. & S. 326, (1.)–(6.): B. 374, *a–c*: B. & M. *1524–1537*: G. Appendix, page 371: H. 707–710.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. 15, 1–4: A. & S. 328: B. 373: B. & M. *1538–1542*: H. 719; 720.

VOCABULARY.

Jānuārĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Jān.)	*of January.*
Februārĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Febr.)	*of February.*
Martĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Mart.)	*of March.*
Aprīlĭs, ĕ, (Apr.)	*of April.*
Māĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Māi.)	*of May.*
Jūnĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Jūn.)	*of June.*
Quīntīlĭs, ĕ, (Quint.)	*of July.*
Sextīlĭs, ĕ, (Sext.)	*of August.*
Septembĕr, brĭs, brĕ, (Sept.)	*of September.*
Octōbĕr, brĭs, brĕ, (Oct.)	*of October.*
Nŏvembĕr, brĭs, brĕ, (Nŏv.)	*of November.*
Dĕcembĕr, brĭs, brĕ, (Dĕc.)	*of December.*

Kălendae, ārŭm, (Kăl.) f. pl., *Calends;* the first day of the Roman month.

Nōnae, ārŭm, (Nōn.) f. pl. *Nones;* the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.

Idūs, uŭm, (Id.) f. pl., *Ides;* the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.

prīdiē, (pr. *or* prīd.) adv., *the day before.*

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Gĕnēvam Kălendis[1] ipsis Nŏvembrĭbus[2] occŭpābit. 2. Qui dies ĕrit a. d. VI. Kăl. Nŏv.[3] (antĕ diem sextum Kălendas Nŏvembres). 3. C.[4] Jūlius Caesar Idĭbus Martiis occīsus est. 4. M. Tullius Cĭcĕro a. d. III. Nōn. Jān. nātus est. 5. P. Scīpio a. d. XVII. Kăl. Māi. mortuus est. 6. Ap. Claudius a. d. II. Nōn. Apr. ĭn sĕnātu lŏcūtus est. 7. Ti. Gracchus Nōnis Jūniis Rōmā[5] prŏfectus est. 8. M. Mānīlius ăd Rōmam prŏfectus est a. d. VI. Id. Sext. 9. Multa verba ōrātōres făciunt a. d. IV. Nōn. Quint. 10. C. Caesar prīd. Nōn.[6] Febr. castra mōvit. 11. Dixi ĕgo ĭn sĕnātu caedem tē contŭlisse[7] princĭpum ĭn a. d. V. Kăl. Nŏv. 12. Caedem princĭpum contŭlisti ex a. d. V. Kăl. Dĕc. ăd pr. Kăl.[6] Jān. 13. T. Labiēnus prīd. Id.[6] Sept. hostes sŭpĕrāvit. 14. Is dies ĕrat a. d. V. Kăl. Apr. L. Pīsōne A. Găbīnio consŭlĭbus.[8] 15. Sī quid vellent, ăd Id. Apr. rĕvertĕrentur. 16. Hōrum est nēmo qui nesciat[9] tē prīd. Kăl.[6] Jān. stĕtisse ĭn cŏmĭtio cŭm tēlo.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

1. Caius Cassius was born on the 31st of October. 2. Marcus Flaccus died on the 4th of May. 3. Caius Gracchus was killed on the 25th of January. 4. Titus Labienus set out from Geneva on the 15th of July. 5. Tiberius Gracchus will

break up camp on the 12th of February. 6. Lucius Piso was elected on the 1st of December. 7. That day was the 16th of April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were consuls.[8] 8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June. 9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of November. 10. There was no one of these who did not know[9] that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

[1] See ***111.***

[2] The Latin names of months are adjectives.

[3] Such an expression as **antĕ diem sextum Kălendas Novembres** is treated as a *single word;* hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time, as in sentence 4; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2; or it is governed by the prepositions **in, ex,** and rarely by **ăd,** as in sentences 11 and 12.

[4] **Cāius**: Latin pronunciation, *Kâh-yoos;* English pronunciation, *Kā-yus.*

[5] See ***107.***

[6] See A. & G. **56,** 2, *a*: A. & S. **238,** 1, (*b.*): B. & M. ***1010:*** H. **437,** 1.

[7] From **confĕro.** [8] See ***122.***

[9] A. & G. **65,** 2: A. & S. **264,** 7: B. **301,** 5: B. & M. ***1218:*** G. **634:** H. **501,** I.

LESSON XCI.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. **prīma lūce,** *at daybreak, at earliest dawn.*
2. **multo die,** *late in the day.*
3. **prīma nocte,** *in the first part of the night.*
4. **ăd multam noctem,** *till late at night.*
5. **prīdiē ējŭs diēi,** *on the day before.*
6. **postrīdiē ējŭs diēi,** *on the following day.*

Translate and parse.

1. Prīma lūce,[1] quŭm summus mons ā T. Lăbiēno tĕnērētur,[2] ipse ăb hostium castris nōn longius mille ĕt quingentis passĭbus[3] abesset, Considius ĕquo[4] admisso ăd eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Lăbiēno occŭpāri vŏluĕrit,[5] ăb hostĭbus tĕnēri. 2. Multo dēnĭquĕ die pĕr explōrātōres Caesar cognōvit ĕt montem ā suis tĕnēri ĕt Helvētios castra mōvisse ĕt Considium tĭmōre perterrĭtum, quŏd nōn vīdisset, prō vīso sĭbi rĕnunciasse.[6] 3. Circĭtĕr hŏmĭnum[7] mīlia sex prīma nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ăd Rhēnum fīnesquĕ Germānōrum contendērunt. 4. Ad multam noctĕm ētiăm ăd impĕdīmenta pugnātum est, proptĕreā quŏd prō vallo carros objĕcĕrant. 5. Collŏquendi[8] Caesări causă vīsa nōn est, ĕt eo[9] măgĭs, quŏd prīdiē ejus diēi[10] Germāni rĕtĭnēri nōn pŏtĕrant, quīn[11] ĭn nostros tēla conjĭcĕrent.[11] 6. Postrīdiē ējus diēi[10] praetĕr castra Caesăris suas cōpias trāduxit ĕt mīlĭbus[12] passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit. 7. Postrīdiē ējus diēi Caesar praesĭdium utrisque castris, quŏd sătĭs essĕ vīsum est, rĕlīquit.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed,[13] and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We stayed at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference[8] does not seem good to us, and the more[9] because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling[11] missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What is the literal meaning of **prīma lūce**? Why is the Ablative used?

[2] Why is the Subjunctive used? See A & G. **325**: A. & S. **263**, 5, REM. 2: B. **304**, RULE LXV.: B. & M. *1244*: G. **581**, II.: H. **518**, II., 1.

[3] See *133*.

[4] See *122*; what is the literal meaning of **ĕquo admisso**?

[5] What mood is **vŏluĕrit**? Why is that mood used in this clause? See *152*.

[6] See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

[7] See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. [8] See *153*.

[9] **eo măgis**, *the more*; for **eo**, see *72*.

[10] See A. & G. **214**, *g* on p. 148: A. & S. **212**, REM. 4, NOTE 6: B. & M. *1005*: H. **411**, 2.

[11] **quin — conjĭcĕrent**, *from hurling*; why is the Imperfect used? See *135*; why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. **65**, 1, *b*: A. & S. **262**, REM. 10: B. **297**, RULE LX.: B. & M. *1218*: G. **551**: H. **498**.

[12] See *147*.

[13] *at full speed*, **ĕquis admissis**; why the Plural?

LESSON XCII.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. **plūs posse**, *to be more powerful.*
2. **plūrĭmum posse**, *to be the most powerful*, or *to be very powerful.*
3. **ei grātias ăgĕre**, *to thank him.*
4. **nōbis est ĭn ănĭmo ĭter făcĕre**, *we intend to march.*
5. **lătĕre ăperto**, *on the unprotected flank.*
6. **ex ĕquis**, *on horseback.*
7. **mĕmŏrĭā tĕnēre**, *to remember.*
8. **maxĭmis pŏtest ĭtĭnĕrĭbus**, *by the longest possible marches.*

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dīcit essĕ nonnullos, qui prīvātim plus[1] possint[2] quăm ipsi măgistrātus. 2. Nōn ĕrat dŭbium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrĭmum[1] Helvētii possent.[3] 3. Dumnŏrix grātiā ĕt largītiōne ăpŭd Sēquănos plūrĭmum pŏtĕrat. 4. Divitiăcus dixit eos, qui ĕt sua virtūte ĕt pŏpŭli Rōmāni hospĭtio atquĕ ămīcĭtia plūrĭmum antĕ ĭn Gallia pŏtuissent,[2] coactos essĕ[4] Sēquănis[5] obsĭdes dăre. 5. Dĕcĭma lĕgio pĕr trĭbūnos mīlĭtum ei grātias ēgit. 6. Caesări rĕnunciātur[6] Helvētiis[7] essĕ ĭn ănĭmo pĕr agrum Sēquănōrum ĕt Aeduōrum ĭter ĭn Santŏnum fīnes făcĕre. 7. Helvētii lēgātos ăd eum mittunt[8] qui dīcĕrent[9] sĭbi essĕ ĭn ănĭmo sĭnĕ ullo măleficio ĭter pĕr prōvinciam făcĕre. 8. Pars ăperto lătĕre[10] lĕgiōnes circumvĕnīre coepit.[11] 9. Capto monte[12] Boii ĕt Tulingi nostros lătĕre ăperto aggressi circumvĕnīre coepērunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex ĕquis ŭt collŏquĕrentur[13] ĕt praeter sē dēnos ŭt ăd collŏquium addūcĕrent,[13] postŭlāvit. 11. Eōrum ūna pars, quăm Gallos obtĭnēre dictum est,[14] attingit ăb[15] Sēquănis ĕt Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum. 12. Id[16] hōc făcĭlius eis persuāsit, quŏd undĭquĕ lŏci nātūrā Helvētii contĭnentur. 13. Mōrĭbus[17] suis Orgetŏrĭgem ex vincŭlis[18] causam dīcĕre coëgērunt; damnātum[19] poenam sequi ŏportēbat,[20] ŭt igni crĕmārētur. 14. Caesar, quŏd mĕmŏriā[21] tĕnēbat[22] L. Cassium consŭlem occīsum exercĭtumquĕ ejus ăb Helvētiis pulsum[23] ĕt sŭb jŭgum missum,[23] concēdendum[24] nōn pŭtābat. 15. Caesări quŭm id[25] nunciātum esset,[26] eos pĕr prōvinciam nostram ĭter făcĕre cōnāri,[27] mātūrat ăb urbe prŏfĭcisci ĕt quăm maxĭmis pŏtest ĭtĭnĕrĭbus[21] ĭn Galliam ultĕriōrem contendit ĕt ăd Gĕnēvam pervĕnit. 16. Ităquĕ re[12] frūmentāriā quăm cĕlerrĭme pŏtuit compărātā magnis ĭtĭnĕrĭbus ăd Ariovistum contendit. 17. Liscus dīcit Dumnŏrĭgem complūres annos[28] portōria rĕlĭquăque[29] omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvo prĕtio rĕdempta hăbēre,[30] proptĕreā quŏd illo[12] lĭcente contrā lĭcēri audeat[31] nēmo.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See A. & G. **52**, 3: A. & S. **232**, (3.): B. **229**, RULE XIII.: B. & M. *728*: G. **331**, REMARKS 2 and 3: H. **380**.

[2] Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause? See *152*.

[3] Why the Subjunctive? See LN. XCI., NOTE 11.

[4] From **cōgo**.

[5] See *39*.

[6] What is the subject of **rēnunciātur**? What is it that *is reported to Caesar?*

[7] See *137*; what is it that *the Helvetii intend* (have in mind) *to do?* What then is the subject of **essĕ**?

[8] See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.

[9] See *136* and Example 10; what question does **qui dicĕrent** answer?

[10] **lātĕre** is an Ablative of *Place*, answering the question *Where?*

[11] What kind of a verb is **coepit**? See *127*.

[12] See *122*.

[13] See *136* and Example 9.

[14] What is the subject of **dictum est**?

[15] **ăb**, *on the side of.*

[16] **id — quŏd**, *he persuaded them to this the more easily, because*; lit., *he persuaded this to them*, etc.; for **hŏc**, see *79*.

[17] See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.

[18] **ex vincŭlis**, *in chains*; what is its literal meaning?

[19] **damnātum**, *if condemned*; see *121*; it modifies **eŭm** understood, the object of **sĕqui**.

[20] What kind of a verb is **ŏportĕbat**? See *128*; what is its subject? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.

[21] See *54*.

[22] What kind of a clause is **quŏd — tĕnĕbat**? See *149*; what is the object of **tĕnĕbat**?

[23] See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

[24] **concĕdendum**, sc. **essĕ**; translate, *that it ought to be granted.*

[25] To what does **id** refer? What *had been reported* to Caesar?

[26] See LN. XCI., NOTE 2.

[27] **cōnāri** is in apposition with **id**.

[28] See *93*.

[29] See LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 1.

[30] **rĕdempta hăbēre**, *had bought up.*

[31] What kind of a verb is **audeat**? See A. & G. **136**: A. & S. **142**, 2: B. **110**, *a*: B. & M. *312*: G. **182**: H. **271**, 3.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvius laqueis irretītus muscŭlum exorāvit, ut eum, corrōsis plagis, liberāret. Quo facto, milvius liberātus murem arripuit et devorāvit.

Haec fabŭla ostendit, quam gratiam mali pro beneficiis reddĕre soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stans in tecto domus, lupo praetereunti maledixit. Cui lupus, *Non tu,* inquit, *sed tectum mihi maledīcit.*

Saepe locus et tempus homĭnes timĭdos audāces reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pavo, coram grue pennas suas explĭcans, *Quanta est,* inquit, *formosĭtas mea et tua deformĭtas!* At grus evŏlans, *Et quanta est,* inquit, *levĭtas mea et tua tardĭtas!*

Monet haec fabŭla, ne ob alĭquod bonum, quod nobis natūra tribuit, alios contemnāmus, quibus natūra alia et fortasse majōra dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in alta rupe stantem conspicātus, *Cur non,* inquit, *relinquis nuda illa et sterilia loca, et huc descendis in herbĭdos campos, qui tibi laetum pabŭlum offĕrunt?* Cui respondit capra: *Mihi non est in anĭmo dulcia tutis praeponere.*

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis jacēbat in praesēpi bovesque latrando a pabŭlo arcēbat. Cui unus boum, *Quanta ista,* inquit, *invidia est, quod non patĕris ut eo cibo vescāmur, quem tu ipse capĕre nec velis nec possis!*

Haec fabŭla invidiae indŏlem declārat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Vulpes, quae nunquam leōnem viděrat, quum ei forte occurrisset, ita est perterrĭta, ut paene morerētur formidĭne. Eundem conspicāta itĕrum, timuit quidem, sed nequāquam, ut antea. Tertio illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius accedĕre eumque allŏqui.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prato pascebantur tres boves in maxĭma concordia, et sic ab omni ferārum incursiōne tuti erant. Sed dissidio inter illos orto, singŭli a feris petīti et laniāti sunt.

Fabŭla docet quantum boni sit in concordia.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asĭnus, pelle leōnis indūtus, territābat homĭnes et bestias tamquam leo esset. Sed forte, dum se celerius movet, aures

eminēbant; unde agnĭtus in pistrīnum abductus est, ubi poenas petulantiae dedit.

Haec fabŭla stolĭdos notat, qui immerĭtis honorĭbus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae ei quotidie ovum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicāri coepit, illam auri massam intus celāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in ea repĕrit, nisi quod in aliis gallīnis reperīri solet. Ităque dum majorĭbus divitiis inhiābat, etiam minōres perdĭdit.

10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo qui unā iter faciēbant, asĭnum oberrantem in solitudĭne conspicāti, accurrunt laeti, et uterque eum sibi vindicāre coepit, quod eum prior conspexisset. Dum vero contendunt et rixantur, nec a verberĭbus abstĭnent, asĭnus aufŭgit et neuter eo potītur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubĭcen ab hostĭbus captus, *Ne me,* inquit, *interfĭcĭte; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.* At hostes, *Propter hoc ipsum,* inquiunt, *te interimēmus, quod, quum ipse pugnandi sis imperītus, alios ad pugnam incitāre soles.*

Fabŭla docet, non solum malefĭcos esse puniendos sed etiam eos, qui alios ad male faciendum irrītent.

12. Sour Grapes.

Vulpes uvam in vite conspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium virium suārum contentiōne, si eam forte attingĕre posset.

Tandem defatigāta ināni labōre discēdens dixit: *At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eas in via repertas tollĕrem.*

Haec fabŭla docet, multos ea contemnĕre, quae se assĕqui posse despērent.

13. The Mice.

Mures aliquando habuērunt consilium, quomŏdo sibi a fele cavērent. Multis aliis proposĭtis, omnĭbus placuit ut ei tintinnabŭlum annecterētur; sic enim ipsos sonĭtu admonĭtos eam fugĕre posse. Sed quum jam inter mures quaererētur, qui feli tintinnabŭlum annectĕret, nemo repertus est.

Fabŭla docet, in suadendo plurĭmos esse audāces, sed in ipso periŏulo timĭdos.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucĭbus lupi os inhaesĕrat. Mercēde igĭtur condūcit gruem, qui illud extrăhat. Hoc grus longitudĭne colli facĭle effēcit. Quum autem mercēdem postulāret, subrīdens lupus et dentĭbus infrendens, *Num tibi,* inquit, *parva merces vidētur, quod caput incolŭme ex lupi faucĭbus extraxisti?*

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antiquissĭmis temporĭbus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicĭtur. Ibi haud procul a Janicŭlo arcem condĭdit, eamque Saturniam appellāvit. Hic Itălos primus agricultūram docuit.

Latīnus and Aenēas.

2. Postea Latīnus in illis regionĭbus imperāvit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asia eversa est. Hinc Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, cum multis Trojānis, quibus ferrum Graecōrum peperc̆erat, aufūgit et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rex ei benigne recepto filiam Laviniam in matrimonium dedit. Aenēas urbem condĭdit, quam in honōrem conjŭgis Lavinium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accēpit. Hic sedem regni in alium locum transtŭlit, urbemque condĭdit in monte Albāno, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem a Lavinia genĭtus erat. Ejus postĕri omnes usque ad Romam condĭtam Albae regnavērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

4. Unus horum regum, Romŭlus Silvius, se Jove majōrem esse dicēbat, et, quum tonāret, militĭbus imperāvit, ut clypeos hastis percutĕrent, dicebatque hunc sonum multo clariōrem esse quam tonitru. Fulmĭne ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Procas, rex Albanōrum, duos filios relīquit Numitōrem et Amulium. Horum minor natu, Amulius, fratri optiōnem dedit, utrum regnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numĭtor paterna bona praetŭlit; Amulius regnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amulius, ut regnum firmissĭme possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidias interēmit et filiam fratris Rheam Silviam

Vestālem virgĭnem fecit. Nam his Vestae sacerdotĭbus non licet viro nubĕre. Sed haec a Marte gemĭnos filios Romŭlum et Remum pepĕrit. Hoc quum Amulius comperisset, matrem in vincŭla conjēcit, puĕros autem in Tibĕrim abjĭci jussit.

7. Forte Tibĕris aqua ultra ripam se effudĕrat, et, quum puĕri in vado essent posĭti, aqua refluens eos in sicco relīquit. Ad eōrum vagītum lupa accurrit, eosque uberĭbus suis aluit. Quod videns Faustŭlus quidam, pastor illīus regiōnis, puĕros sustŭlit et uxōri Accae Laurentiae nutriendos dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Romŭlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transegērunt. Quum adolevissent et forte comperissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae mater fuisset, Amulium interfecērunt et Numitōri avo regnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīno quam Romŭlus a suo nomĭne Romam vocāvit. Haec quum moenĭbus circumdarētur, Remus occīsus est, dum fratrem irrīdens moenia transiliēbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Romŭlus, ut civium numĕrum augēret, asўlum patefēcit, ad quod multi ex civitatĭbus suis pulsi accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis civĭbus conjŭges deĕrant. Festum ităque Neptūni et ludos instituit. Ad hos quum multi ex finitĭmis popŭlis cum mulierĭbus et liberis venissent, Romāni inter ipsos ludos spectantes virgĭnes rapuērunt.

War with the Sabines. — Tarpeia.

10. Popŭli illi, quorum virgĭnes raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōres suscepērunt. Quum Romae appropinquārent, forte in Tarpēiam virgĭnem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra pro-

curābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret, eīque permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscĕret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistris manĭbus gerĕrent, ānŭlos aureos et armillas signifĭcans. At hostes in arcem ab ea perducti scutĭs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manĭbus gerēbant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11. Tum Romŭlus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum est. In media caede raptae processērunt, et hinc patres hinc conjŭges et socĕros complectebantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facĕrent. Utrīque his precĭbus commōti sunt. Romŭlus foedus icit et Sabīnos in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. — His Death.

12. Postea civitātem descripsit. Centum senatōres legit eosque quum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iis debĭtam patres appellāvit. Plebem in triginta curias distribuit, easque raptārum nominĭbus nuncupāvit. Anno regni tricesĭmo septĭmo, quum exercĭtum lustrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente ocŭlis homĭnum subductus est. Hinc alii eum a senatorĭbus interfectum, alii ad deos sublātum esse existimavērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius, B. C. 716 - 673.

13. Post Romŭli mortem unīus anni interregnum fuit. Quo elapso, Numa Pompilius Curĭbus, urbe in agro Sabinōrum, natus rex creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nullum gessit; nec minus tamen civitāti profuit. Nam et leges dedit, et sacra plurĭma instituit, ut popŭli barbări et bellicōsi mores mollīret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, se nymphae Egeriae,

conjŭgis suæ, jussu facĕre dicēbat. Morbo decessit, quadragesĭmo tertio impĕri anno.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius, B. C. 673 – 641.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cujus avus se in bello adversus Sabīnos fortem et strenuum virum praestitĕrat. Rex creātus bellum Albānis indixit, idque trigeminōrum Horātiōrum et Curiatiōrum certamĭne finīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Metti Fufĕti diruit. Quum triginta duōbus annis regnasset, fulmĭne ictus cum domo sua arsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius, B. C. 640 – 616.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscēpit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte et religiōne avo simĭlis, Latīnos bello domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova ei moenia circumdĕdit. Carcĕrem primus aedificāvit. Ad Tibĕris ostia urbem condĭdit, Ostiamque vocāvit. Vicesĭmo quarto anno impĕri morbo obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus, B. C. 616 – 578.

16. Deinde regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Demarāti filius, qui tyrannos patriae Corinthi fugiens in Etruriam venĕrat. Ipse Tarquinius, qui nomen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquando Romam profectus erat. Advenienti aquĭla pileum abstŭlit, et, postquam alte evolavĕrat, reposuit. Hinc Tanăquil conjux, mulier auguriōrum perīta, regnum ei portendi intellexit.

17. Quum Romæ commorarētur, Anci regis familiaritātem consecūtus est, qui eum filiōrum suōrum tutōrem relīquit. Sed is pupillis regnum intercēpit. Senatorĭbus, quos Romŭlus creavĕrat, centum alios addĭdit, qui minōrum gentium sunt

appellāti. Plura bella felicĭter gessit, nec paucos agros hostĭbus ademptos urbis territorio adjunxit. Primus triumphans urbem intrāvit. Cloācas fecit; Capitolium inchoāvit. Tricesĭmo octāvo impĕri anno per Anci filios, quibus regnum eripuĕrat, occīsus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius, B. C. 578 – 534.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, genĭtus ex nobĭli femĭna, captīva tamen et famŭla. Quum in domo Tarquini Prisci educarētur, flamma in ejus capĭte visa est. Hoc prodigio Tanăquil ei summam dignitātem portendi intellexit, et conjŭgi persuāsit, ut eum sicŭti libĕros suos educāret. Quum adolevisset, rex ei filiam in matrimonium dedit.

19. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanăquil de superiōre parte domus popŭlum allocūta est, dicens; *regem grave quidem sed non letāle vulnus accepisse; eum petĕre, ut popŭlus, dum convaluisset, Servio Tullio obedīret.* Sic Servius regnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montes tres urbi adjunxit. Primus omnium censum ordināvit. Sub eo Roma habuit octoginta tria milia civium Romanōrum cum his, qui in agris erant.

20. Hic rex interfectus est scelĕre filiae Tulliae et Tarquini Superbi, fili ejus regis, cui Servius successĕrat. Nam ab ipso Tarquinio de gradĭbus curiae dejectus, quum domum fugĕret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prima conjŭgem regem salutāvit. Quum domum redīret, aurīgam super patris corpus in via jacens carpentum agĕre jussit.

Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome, B. C. 534 – 510.

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen morĭbus meruit. Bello tamen strenuus plures finitimōrum populōrum vicit. Tem-

plum Jovis in Capitolio aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Lati, imperium perdĭdit. Nam quum filius ejus Lucretiae, nobilissĭmae femĭnae, conjŭgi Tarquini Collatīni, vim fecisset, haec se ipsam occīdit in conspectu marĭti, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eos obtestāta fuĕrat, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatīnus, aliīque nonnulli in exitium regis conjurārunt, populōque persuasērunt, ut ei portas urbis claudĕret. Exercĭtus quoque, qui civitātem Ardeam cum rege oppugnābat, eum relīquit. Fugit ităque cum uxōre et libĕris suis. Ita Romae septem reges regnavērunt annos ducentos quadraginta tres.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

1. **ut — liberāret,** see ***136*** and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. — **corrōsis plagis,** *by gnawing the nets;* see ***122.*** — **quo,** see ***122;*** what is its antecedent? — **ostendit,** what is its object? — **mali,** see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — **soleant,** see ***151*** and LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

2. **lupo,** see ***132.*** — **praetereunti** (**praeter** and **eo**), see ***126;*** translate the Participle by a Relative Clause. — **inquit,** see A. & G. **38,** 2, *b*: A. & S. **183,** 5: B. **111,** *c,* 2: B. & M. ***444:*** G. **190** 2: H. **297,** II., 2. — **reddit,** see A. & G. **49,** 1, *b*: A. & S. **209,** REM. 12, (2): B. **287,** *a*: B. & M. ***644:*** G. **281,** EXCEPTION 2: H. **463,** II., 3.

3. **explicans,** *spreading.* — **inquit,** see note on **inquit,** Fable 2. — **aliquod,** see ***116,*** *a.* — **quod,** see ***34*** and ***115.*** — **contemnāmus,** see ***136.*** — **alia, majōra,** see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

4. **laetum,** *abundant.* — **mihi,** see ***137.*** — **est,** what is its subject? — **dulcia,** see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1. — **tutis,** see ***67.***

5. **boves,** see A. & G. **61,** page 25, **bōs**: A. & S. **83,** II., REMARK 1; **84,** EXC. 1: B. **138:** B. & M. ***123:*** G. **80:** H. **66.** — **latrando,** see ***153***

and *54*. — **quod — patĕris**, see *149*. — **cibo**, see *54* and *104*. — **velis**, see *125* and LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. **occurrisset**, see A. & G. **62**, 2, *b*: A. & S. **263**, 5, REM. 2: B. **304**, RULE LXV.: B. & M. *1244:* G. **581**, II.: H. **518**, II. — **morerētur**, see *139*. — **nequāquam, antea**, what do they modify? — **obviam facta**, *having met;* **obviam** is used with the Dative. — **ausa est**, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. **pascebantur**, what does the Imperfect Tense denote? see *36*. — **boves**, see note on **boves**, Fable 5. — **petiti**, sc. **sunt**. — **boni**, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — **sit**, see *151*.

8. **pelle**, see *54*. — **indūtus**, *having clothed himself*. — **esset**, see A. & G. **61**, 1: A. & S. **263**, 2: G. **604**: H. **506**. — **movet**, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 11. — **unde**, *for which reason*, i. e. because his ears stuck out. — **agnītus**, from *agnosco;* render as if it were **agnītus est**, and supply *and*. — **dedit**, *suffered*. — **honorĭbus**, see *79*.

9. **suspicāri**, see *69*. — **cospit**, see *127*. — **illam**, why in the Accusative? why Feminine? — **quod** is here equivalent to **id quod**; compare the English *what*, equivalent to *that which*. — **solet**, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — **majorĭbus**, see *84* and *85*. — **divitiis**, see *67*. — **minōres**, what does it modify?

10. **duo**, see *108* and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — **accurrunt**, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1. — **læti**, *joyfully;* see A. & G. **47**, 6: A. & S. **205**, REM. 15: B. **270**, *b*: B. & M. *663:* G. **324**, REMARK 6: H. **443**. — **prior**, see note on **læti**; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned. — **conspexisset**, see *149*. — **eo**, see *104*.

11. **tubĭcen**, what is its derivation? see GEN. VY. — **inquit**, see note on **inquit**, Fable 2. — **interfĭcīte**, see *47*. — **inermis**, derivation? see GEN. VY. — **propter hoc ipsum**, *for this very reason;* what is the reason? — **pugnandi**, see *153* and *140*. — **sis**, see *145*. — **soles**, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — **esse puniendos**, see *130*. — **eos**, why in the Accusative? — **irritent**, see A. & G. **65**, 2: A. & S. **264**, 1. (*a*.): B. **301**: B. & M. *1220, b*: G. **633**: H. **500**, 2, *last part*.

12. **vulpes**, see A. & G. **6**, 4: A. & S. **33**: B. **118**, III., REM. 2: B. & M. *41:* G. **20**, 3: H. **43**, 3. — **omnium — contentiōne**, *with all its might;* what is the literal translation? for the Abl. **contentiōne**, see *54*. — **si**, (*to see*) *whether*. — **posset**, see *151*. — **repertas**, from **reperio**; see *121*. — **tollĕrem**, see *143* and A. & G. **60**, 1, *a*: A. & S. **261**, REM. 4: B. **305**, *third clause:* G. **594**, 2: H. **503**, 2, 1). — **quae**, see *34*. — **se**, see *53*. — **desperent**, see note on **irritent**, Fable 11.

13. **quomŏdo**, (*to see*) *by what means*. — **sibi**, see A. & G. **51**, 2, *a*, 3: A. & S. **223**: B. **239**: B. & M. *836:* G. **347**: H. **385**, 3. — **cavērent**,

see *151.* — **aliis,** see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1 and *122.* — **placuit,** what is its subject? — **annecterētur,** see A. & G. **70,** 4, *a*: A. & S. **262,** REM. 3: B. **301,** RULE LXII.: B. & M. *1222:* G. **558:** H. **495,** 2. — **sic — posse;** this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as *they thought, they said.* — **quaererētur,** see note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6; what is the subject of **quaererētur?** — **suadēndo,** see *153.* — **plurīmos,** see *85* and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

14. **inhaesērat,** from **inhaereo.** — **mercēde,** see *146.* — **extrahat,** see *136.* — **hoc,** what was *this* that the crane accomplished? — **postulāret,** see note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6. — **num,** what answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1. — **merces,** see *64.* — **vidētur,** what is its subject? — **faucibus,** how declined in the Singular? in the Plural? See GEN. VY.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

1. **Janiculo,** *the Janiculum* is a hill on the west side of the Tiber; *the seven hills* are on the east side; these are *the Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, Aventine, Coelian, Esquiline,* and *Viminal.* — **eam Saturniam,** see *58.* — **Itālos, agricultūram,** see *71.* — **primus — docuit,** *was the first who taught;* see A. & G. **47,** 6: A. & S. **205,** REM. 15: B. **271,** REMARK: B. & M. *663:* G. **324,** 7: H. **442,** 1.

2. **in — regionibus;** what country is meant? — **sub,** *in the reign of.* — **Troja,** *Troy* is said to have been destroyed in B. C. 1184. — **hinc,** *from this place,* i. e. from Troy. — **Aenēae, Anchisae,** how declined? See A. & G. **9,** 3: A. & S. **44:** B. **125:** B. & M. *52:* G. **72:** H. **50.** — **quibus,** see *132.* — **Lavinium** was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles from the coast.

3. **Aenēae,** see note on **Aenēae** in preceding section. — **transtŭlit,** see *123.* — **Albam Longam,** *Alba Longa* was about 16 miles southeast of Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking the Alban Lake. — **secūtus est,** *succeeded.* — **genĭtus erat,** from **gigno.** — **ad Romam conditam,** *until the founding of Rome;* what is the literal translation? — **Albae,** see *106.*

4. **Jove,** see *133* and A. & G. **60,** *b,* page 25: A. & S. **85:** B. **138:** B. & M. *123:* H. **66,** 3. — **tonāret,** see *128* and note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6. — **multo,** see *144.* — **tonitru,** what case? why? — **ictus,** sc. **est.** — **Albānum Lacum,** see note on **Albam Longam** in section 3.

5. **minor natu = junior;** for **natu,** see *124.* — **vellet,** see *125* and *151.* **reliquisset,** see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. **vestālem virginem,** *a vestal virgin* was bound by a vow of chastity; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. — **licet,** what is its subject? — **viro nubĕre,** *to marry;* for **viro,** see *132;* what does **nubĕre** mean? — **pepĕrit,** from **pario.** — **hoc,** what was it that Amulius had found out?

7. **essent positi,** see A. & G. **62,** 2, *e*: A. & S. **263,** 5: B. **302,** 1: B. & M. *1251:* G. **587:** H. **518,** I. — **quod,** what is its antecedent? what did *a certain Faustulus see?* — **regiōnis,** what *region* is meant? — **nutriendos,** *to be nourished,* modifies **pueros,** and expresses the purpose of **dedit.**

8. **adolevissent,** from **adolesco;** see note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6. — **quis,** see *64.* — **avus,** sc. **fuisset** and see *151.* — **monte Aventino,** *Mount Aventine,* one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.

9. **civĭbus,** see A. & G. **51,** 3, *a*: A. & S. **226,** Rem. 2: B. **242,** Rem. 3: B. & M. *820:* H. **386,** 2. — **inter,** *in the midst of.* — **ipsos,** *very.* — **spectantes,** translate by a relative clause.

10. **Romae,** see *67.* — **in incidērunt,** *they came unexpectedly upon.* — **quod,** see note on **quod,** Fable 9. — **gerĕrent,** see Ln. LXXXIX., Note 5. — **et ea,** *these also,* i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.

11. **Montem Tarpēium,** *the Tarpeian mount;* probably the Capitoline hill. — **forum Romānum,** *the Roman Forum,* an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings; here the Roman people, *the Populus Romanus,* met to transact business. — **media,** *midst of.* — **raptae,** sc. **mulĭeres.** — **hinc — hinc,** *here — there.* — **utrique,** who are meant? — **icit,** compare the English expression, *strike a bargain;* the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of **ico.**

12. **quum — tum,** *both — and.* — **raptārum,** sc. **mulĭerum.** — **inter,** *in the midst of.* — **ortam,** *which had arisen.* — **octāvis,** see *67.* — **hinc,** i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentence. — **alii — alii,** *some — others.* — **interfectum,** sc. **esse.** — **sublātum esse** from **tollo.**

13. **quo,** what is its antecedent? — **Curĭbus,** see *106.* — **jussu,** see *79.* **facĕre,** what is its object? — **morbo decessit,** i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings; with **decessit** supply **de vita.**

14. **praestitĕrat,** what does it govern? see *58.* — **creātus,** see Ln. LXIII. and Examples. — **Horatiōrum.** The Horatii fought for Rome, the Curiatii for Alba. The three Curiatii fell, but one of the Horatii survived; this gave the victory to the Romans. — **Metti Fufĕti,** see *17;* for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed

to Rome and located on the Coelian hill; this was the origin of the Roman *Plebs.* — **annis** expresses *duration of time;* what is the more usual construction? see **93.** — **arsit,** fr. **ardeo, ardēre, arsi, arsum,** *burn.*

15. **aequitāte,** see **124.** — **avo,** see **86.** — **bello,** see **54.** — **ei,** see A. & G. **51,** 1, *c*: A. & S. **249,** REM. 3: B. **242,** REM. 3: B. & M. **859:** G. **348:** H. **384,** II., 1. — **primus,** see note on **primus,** section **1.** — **obiit,** see **126** and note on **morbo decessit,** section **13.**

16. **deinde,** i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius. — **qui** refers to **Demarāti.** — **advenienti,** sc. **ei** and see A. & G. **51,** 2, *c*: A. & S. **224,** REM. 1: B. **242,** REM. 3: B. & M. **829:** H. **386,** 2. — **abstŭlit** from **aufĕro, auferre, abstŭli, ablātum,** *carry off;* derived from **ab** *away, off;* and **fero** *carry.* — **augurĭorum,** see **140.**

17. **Romae,** see **106.** — **commorarētur,** see note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6. — **tutōrem,** *as guardian;* compare **58.** — **pupillis,** see **67.** — **gentium** modifies **senatōres** understood. — **plura,** *several;* how declined? See LN. LXXXIV., NOTE 11. — **ademptos,** from **adĭmo.** — **primus,** see note on **primus,** section **1.** — **Cloācas.** The main *sewer,* known as the Cloaca Maxima, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use. — **Capitolium,** *the Capitol,* signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. — **per filios,** *at the instigation of the sons;* they hired assassins to murder him: **a filiis** would signify that they killed him with their own hands. — **quibus,** see note on **ei,** section **16.**

18. **genĭtus,** from **gigno.** — **captīva,** see **25.** — **domo,** how declined? See **97.** — **conjŭgi,** see **132** and EX. 1. — **educāret,** see **136.**

19. **domus**; this stood on the Palatine. — **regem** — **obedīret**; change this to the Direct Discourse; see **152.** — **eum** refers to **regem.** — **coepit,** see **127.** — **montes** — **adjunxit.** The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. — **milia,** how declined? see **108.** — **civium,** see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

20. **scelĕre,** see **79.** — **filiae,** see **25.** — **curiae.** The *senate-house* stood near the Forum. — **domum,** see **105;** how declined? — **prima,** see note on **primus,** section **1.** — **regem,** *as king;* compare **58.**

21. **cognōmen,** i. e. **Superbus,** *the Proud.* — **morĭbus,** see **79.** — **bello,** see **111.** — **plures,** how declined? see note on **plura,** section **17.** — **populōrum,** see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — **Templum.** This *temple* had been begun by Tarquinius Priscus; see section **17.** — **Jovis,** how declined? see note on **Jove,** section **4.** — **Lucretiae,** see **39.** — **vim,** how declined? See GEN. VY. — **ut** — **ulciscerentur,** see **136** and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

22. **in,** *for.* — **conjurārunt,** see LN. LXXV., NOTE 11. — **populo,** see **132.** — **ei,** *against him;* see **39.** — **civitātem** = **urbem.** — **Ardea** was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in SMALL CAPITALS are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page xii.

A.

A., abbreviation of *Aulus*, a Roman praenomen.

ăb, ā, prep. w. abl. *from, away from; by; on the side of.*

ab-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (ab *away*, duco *lead*), *lead away.* ABDUCT, ABDUCTION.

ab-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (ab *away, down;* jacio *cast*), *cast away* or *down.* ABJECT.

abs-tĭneo, tĭnĕrĕ, tĭnŭī, tentŭm (ab(s) *from*, teneo *keep*), *keep from*, ABSTAIN. ABSTINENCE.

ab-sŭm, essĕ, fuī (ab *away*, sum *be*) *be away, be* ABSENT, *be distant.*

āc. See **atquĕ.**

Accă, ae, f., *Acca Lārentia*, the wife of Faustulus.

ac-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (ad *towards*, cedo *go*), *go towards, draw near, approach; assault.* ACCEDE, ACCESSION.

ac-cĭdo, cĭdĕrĕ, cĭdī (ad *upon*, cado *fall*), *fall upon, befall, happen.* ACCIDENT.

ac-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (ad *to* one's self, capio *take*), *receive*, ACCEPT, *take.*

ac-curro, currĕrĕ, cŭcurrī and **currī, cursŭm** (ad *to*, curro *run*), *run to, hasten to.*

accūso, ārĕ, āvī, atŭm (ad *to*, causa *a lawsuit*), ACCUSE, *blame, censure.* ACCUSATION.

ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *sharp.* ACRID.

ăcerbŭs, ă, ŭm, *sour.* ACERBITY.

ăciēs, ăciēi, f., *edge; line, line of battle; army* in battle-array. See **agmen.**

ācrĭtĕr, ācrĭŭs, ācerrĭmē, adv. (**acer** *sharp*), *sharply, fiercely, violently.*

ăd, prep. w. acc. *to, towards; for; near;* w. numerals, *about;* w. names of towns, *towards, in* or *into the vicinity of.*

ăd-ămo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**ad** denoting *a beginning,* **amo** *love*), *begin to love, acquire a liking for.*

ad-do, dĕrĕ, dĭdī, dĭtŭm (**ad** *to, beside;* **do** *put*), ADD.

ad-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (**ad** *to,* **duco** *lead*), *lead to, lead; influence.*

ăd-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (**ad** *to,* **eo** *go*), *go to.* See ***126.***

ăd-ĭmo, ĭmĕrĕ, ēmī, emptŭm (**ad** *to* one's self, **emo** *take*), *take away.*

ădĭtŭs, ūs, m. (**adeo** *go to*), *approach, access.*

ad-jungo, jungĕrĕ, junxī, junctŭm (**ad** *to,* **jungo** *join*), *join to, join.*

ad-mĭnistro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**ad** without additional force, **ministro** *serve*), ADMINISTER, *manage.* ADMINISTRATION, ADMINISTRATOR.

ad-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (**ad** *to,* **mitto** *let go*), *allow,* ADMIT; *give the reins to;* **equo admisso,** *at full speed.* ADMISSION.

ad-mŏneo, mŏnērĕ, mŏnuī, mŏnĭtŭm (**ad** w. no perceptible additional force, **moneo** *admonish*), ADMONISH, *warn.* ADMONITION.

ădŏlesco, adŏlescĕrĕ, ădŏlēvī, ădultŭm (**adoleo** *cause to grow up*), *grow, increase, grow up.* ADULT.

ad-sŭm, ad-essĕ, af-fuī (**ad** *near,* **sum** *be*), *be near, be present; assist.*

ad-vĕnio, venīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm (**ad** *to,* **venio** *come*), *come to, arrive, come.* ADVENTURE.

adventŭs, ūs, m. (**advenio** *come to*), *arrival, approach.* ADVENT.

adversŭs and **adversŭm,** prep. w. acc. *towards, against.*

ad-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (**ad** *towards,* **verto** *turn*), *turn towards;* **id animum advertĕre,** *to turn the mind towards it, to perceive it.* ADVERT.

aedĭfĭciŭm, ī, n. (**aedifico** *build*), *building,* EDIFICE.

aedĭfĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**aedes** *building* for habitation, **facio** *make*), *build.* EDIFY, EDIFICATION.

Aeduī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul.

aegĕr, aegrā, aegrŭm, *sick.*

Aenēas, ae, m., a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchīses.

aequĭtās, ātĭs, f. (**aequus** *fair, equitable*), EQUITY, *justice, moderation.*

aequŭs, ă, ŭm, *even, level;* EQUAL; *like; fair, equitable.*

aestās, ātĭs, f., *summer.*

aetās, ātĭs, f., *age.*

af-fĕro, af-ferrĕ, at-tŭlī, al-lātŭm (ad *to,* fero *bring*), *bring to, carry to; offer; carry.*

af-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (ad *to,* facio *do*), AFFECT, *influence;* **magno dolōre affĭci,** *to be very grievously affected.*

ăgĕr, agrī, m., *field, land; country, territory.*

aggĕr, aggĕrĭs, m., *mound; materials for a mound.*

ag-grĕdior, grĕdī, gressŭs sŭm (ad *to,* gradior *go*), *go to, approach; go against, attack.* AGGRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.

agmĕn, agmĭnĭs, n. (ago *put in motion*), *army* on the march, *line of march;* [**acies,** *army* in battle array; **exercĭtus,** a disciplined *army*]; **agmen novissĭmum,** *the rear;* **prīmum agmen,** *the van.*

ag-nosco, noscĕrĕ, nōvī, nĭtŭm (ad denoting *reference,* (g)nosco *know*), *recognize; know.*

ăgo, ăgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm, *put in motion; lead, drive, conduct; act, do, perform.* ACTION, AGENT.

agrīcultūră, ae, f. (ager *field,* colo *cultivate*), AGRICULTURE.

ălăcĕr, ălacrĭs, ălacrĕ, *lively, cheerful; eager, fierce.*

ălacrĭtās, ātĭs, f. (alacer *lively*), *liveliness, eagerness, zeal.* ALACRITY.

Albă or **Albă Longă,** the mother city of Rome, built by Ascanius.

Albānŭs, ī, m., *an Alban,* an inhabitant of Alba.

alĭquandŏ, adv. (**aliquis** *some one*), *at some time, once, formerly.*

ălĭquĭs, indef. pron. [see ***116, a***], *some one, somebody, something, some; anyone, anybody, anything, any.*

ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd [see ***24***], *other, another.*

Allobrŏgēs, um, m. pl., a people in the southeastern part of Gaul.

al-lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sŭm (ad *to,* loquor *speak*), *speak to, address.*

ălo, ălĕrĕ, ălŭī, ălĭtŭm or **altŭm,** *nourish, feed, support.*

Alpēs, Alpĭŭm, f. pl. *the* ALPS.

altē, altĭŭs, altissĭmē (altus *high, low*), *on high, highly; low, lowly.*

altĕr, altĕră, altĕrŭm [see ***24***], *one of two, the other, the second;* **altĕr — alĭĕr,** *the one — the other.*

altĭtūdŏ, altĭtūdĭnĭs, f. (altus *high, deep*), *height; depth;* ALTITUDE.

altŭs, ă, ŭm (alo *nourish*), *high, lofty; deep.*

ămīcĭtiă, ae, f. (amīcus *friendly*), *friendship.*

ămīcŭs, ă, ŭm (amo *love*), *loving, friendly;* **ămīcŭs, ī,** m. *friend.* AMICABLE.

ā-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (ab *away*, mitto *let go*), *lose.*

amplio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (amplus *of large extent*), *enlarge.*

ampliŭs, adv. *more, farther.*

Amuliŭs, ī, m., son of Silvius Procas and brother of Numitor.

ăn, adv. *or.*

Anchīsēs, ae, m., a Trojan, the father of Aenēas.

Ancŭs Marciŭs, ī, m., the fourth king of Rome.

angustiae, ārŭm, f. pl. (angustus *narrow*), *narrow pass, defile; difficulty.*

ănĭm-ad-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (animus *mind*, adverto *turn towards*), *notice.* ANIMADVERT, ANIMADVERSION.

ănĭmāl, ănĭmālĭs, n., ANIMAL.

ănĭmŭs, ī, m., *mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage.* [**anĭmus** denotes the human *soul*, including all its faculties, including **mens**; **mens** denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]

an-necto, nectĕrĕ, nexuī, nexŭm (ad *to*, necto *tie, fasten*), *tie to, fasten to.* ANNEX.

annŭs, ī, m., *year.* ANNUAL.

antĕ, prep. w. acc., *before;* adv. *before, previously.* ANTE in ANTECEDENT, etc.

anteā, adv. (ante *before*, ea *that*), *before, previously.*

antīquŭs, ă, ŭm (ante *before*), *ancient, old; of long continuance.* ANTIQUE, ANTIQUATED.

ānŭlŭs, ī, m., *ring.* ANNULAR.

Ap., abbreviation of *Appius*, a Roman prænomen.

ăpertŭs, ă, ŭm (aperio *uncover*), *uncovered, unprotected.*

ap-pello, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ad *to*, pello *bring* one's self to a person), *address; name, call.* APPEAL, APPELLATION.

ap-prŏpinquo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ad *to*, propinquo *draw near*), *draw near to, approach.*

ăpŭd, prep. w. acc, *at, near, in presence of, among.*

ăquă, ae, f., *water.* AQUEDUCT.

ăquĭlă, ae, f., *eagle.*

Aquĭlēiă, ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

Aquītānī, ōrŭm, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.

Aquītāniă, ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.

Arăr, Arărĭs, acc. **Arărĭm**, m., *the Saône* [pronounced *Sōne*], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.

arcesso, arcessĕrĕ, arcessīvī, arcessītŭm, *invite, summon.*

arceo, arcērĕ, arcuī, *drive away; ward off, keep from; restrain.*

Ardea, ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutŭli.

armă, ōrŭm, n. pl., ARMS, *weapons.*

armillă, ae, f., *bracelet* or *ring*, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.

Ariovistus, ī, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar.

ar-rĭpio, rĭpŭī, reptŭm (**ad** *upon*, **rapio** *seize*), *seize upon.*

arrŏgantĭă, ae, f. (**arrogans** *assuming*), *haughtiness, insolence,* ARROGANCE.

Arvernī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people in the eastern part of Aquitania.

arx, arcĭs, f., *citadel, fortress.*

Ascaniŭs, ī, m., son of Aeneas.

Asia, ae, f., ASIA.

ăsĭnŭs, ī, m., *an ass.*

as-sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm (**ad** with no perceptible additional force, **sequor** *follow*), *follow : overtake ; obtain.*

ăsўlŭm, ī, n. ASYLUM.

ăt, conj. *but.*

at-tingo, tingĕrĕ, tĭgī, tactŭm (**ad** *against*, **tango** *touch*), *touch against, border upon ; touch, reach.*

atquĕ, āc, conj. (**ad** *in addition*, **que** *and*), *and also, and.*

auctōrĭtās, ātĭs, f. (**auctor** *producer*), AUTHORITY, *influence.*

audācĭă, ae, f. (**audax** *bold*), *boldness,* AUDACITY.

audācĭtĕr or **audactĕr, audācĭŭs, audācissĭmē,** adv. (**audax** *bold*), *boldly, courageously.*

audax, gen. **audācĭs** (**audeo** *dare*), *bold, daring,* AUDACIOUS.

audeo, audēsŭs sŭm [see LN. XCII., NOTE 31], *dare, venture.*

audio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm, *hear.* AUDIT, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.

au-fŭgio, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm (**ab** *away*, **fugio** *flee*), *flee away, escape ; flee.*

augeo, augĕrĕ, auxī, auctŭm, *increase,* AUGMENT.

augŭrium, ī, n. (**auguror** fr. **augur** *diviner*), AUGURY, *divination.*

aurĕŭs, ă, ŭm (**aurum** *gold*), *golden.*

aurĭgă, ae, m. (**aurea** *bridle*, **ago** *manage*), *charioteer.*

aurĭs, aurĭs, f. *ear.* AURI-CULAR.

aurŭm, ī, n., *gold.*

aut, conj. *or :* **aut — aut,** *either — or.*

autĕm, conj, *but, yet, moreover.*

auxĭlium, ī, n. (**augeo** *increase*), *help, aid :* pl. AUXILIARIES.

Aventīnŭs, ī, m., *the Aventine.*

aversŭs, ă, ŭm (**averto** *turn away*), *turned away :* **aversus hostis,** *a retreating enemy.*

ă-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (**ab** *away*, **verto** *turn*), *turn away, turn aside,* AVERT. AVERSION.

ăvŭs, ī, m., *grandfather.*

B.

barbărŭs, ă, ŭm, *foreign : uncivilized ; savage, rude,* BARBAROUS. BARBARIAN.

beātŭs, ă, ŭm (**beo** *bless*), *happy.* BEATIFIC.

Belgae, ārŭm, m. pl., a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul.

bellĭcōsŭs, ă, ŭm, *warlike.*

bello, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**bellum** *war*), *carry on war.*

bellŭm ī, n., *war.*

bĕnĕ, adv., *well, finely.*

bĕnĕfĭcium, ī, n., *kindness,* BENEFIT. BENEFICIAL.

bĕnignē, adv. (**benignus** *kind*), *kindly;* BENIGNLY. BENIGN, BENIGNANT.

bestiă, ae, f., BEAST.

Bibractĕ, ĭs, n., the chief town of the Aedui.

biennium, ī, n. (**bis** *twice*, **annus** *year*), *two years.* BIENNIAL.

Bōiī, ōrŭm, m. pl., *the Boii* [pronounced *Bŏ-yī*], a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany.

bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm, *good, friendly;* **bŏnŭm, ī,** n. *a good thing, an advantage;* **bŏnă, ōrŭm,** n. pl., *goods, an estate.*

bōs, bŏvĭs, m. and f., *ox, cow.*

brĕvĭs, brĕvĕ, *short,* BRIEF.

Brūtŭs, ī, m. (**brutus** *stupid*), *L. Junius Brutus,* the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion.

C.

C., abbreviation of **Cāiŭs** [pronounced *Că-yus*], a Roman praenomen.

caedēs, caedĭs, f. (**caedo** *kill*), *murder, slaughter, carnage.*

caedo, caedĕrĕ, cĕcīdī, caesŭm, *cut, cut down; kill, murder.* -CIDE in PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE, etc.

Caesăr, Caesărĭs, m., *Caius Julius Caesar,* a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.

Cāiŭs Vălĕrĭŭs Procillus, a distinguished Gaul, friend of Caesar.

călămĭtās, ātĭs, f., CALAMITY, *disaster, misfortune.*

campŭs, ī, m., *plain, field;* **Campus,** *the Campus Martius,* a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.

cănĭs, cănĭs, m. and f., *dog.*

căpio, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm, *take,* CAPTURE.

Căpĭtōlium, ī, n. (**caput** *head*), THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome; *the Capitoline hill,* including both temple and citadel.

capră, ae, f., *a she-goat.*

captīvŭs, ă, ŭm (**capio** *capture*), CAPTIVE; **captīvŭs, ī,** m., *a captive, a prisoner.*

căpŭt, căpĭtĭs, n., *head.* OCCIPUT.

carcĕr, carcĕrĭs, m., *prison.* INCARCER-ATE.

cāreo, cārērĕ, cāruī, cārĭtŭm, *be without, lack.*

carpentŭm, ī, n., *chariot.*

carrŭs, ī, m., CART, *wagon.*

cārŭs, ă, ŭm, *dear, beloved.*

Cassiŭs, ī, m., a Roman name.

castellŭm, ī, n. (**castrum** *a fortified place*), CASTLE, *fort, stronghold.*

Casticŭs, ī, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castrā, ōrŭm, n. pl., *soldiers' huts, camp.*

causă, ae, f., CAUSE, *reason, motive;* **causā,** *for the sake of,* when following a Genitive; **causam dicĕre,** *to plead one's cause.*

căveo, căvērĕ, cāvī, cautŭm, *be on one's guard.* CAUTIOUS.

cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ (cello *impel*), *swift, speedy.* CELERITY.

cĕlĕrĭtĕr, cĕlĕrĭŭs, cĕlerrĭmē, adv. (celer *swift*), *swiftly, quickly, immediately.*

cēlo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, CONCEAL, *hide.*

censŭs, ūs, m. (censeo *assess, register*), CENSUS.

Centrōnēs, ŭm, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.

centŭm, num. adj. indecl., *hundred.*

certāmĕn, certāmĭnĭs, n. (certo *contend*), *contest; battle.*

certŭs, ă, ŭm (cerno *determine*), CERTAIN, *sure;* **Caesarĕm certiōrem facĕre,** *to inform Caesar.*

cētĕrī, ae, ă, adj. pl., *the rest.*

cĭbŭs, ī, m., *food.*

cingo, cingĕrĕ, cinxī, cinctŭm, *surround, encircle.* CINCTURE.

circĭtĕr, adv. (circus *circle*), *about, near.*

circŭm, prep. w. acc. (**circus** *circle*), *around; near, in the environs of.* CIRCUM- is a prefix in many English words; e. g. CIRCUM-FERENCE, CIRCUM-NAVIGATE.

circum-do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătŭm (**circum** *around,* do *put*), *put around, surround.*

circum-vĕnio, vĕnīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm (**circum** *around,* venio *come*), *come around, surround;* CIRCUMVENT.

cĭtĕrior, cĭtĕrĭŭs [see *85*], *hither.*

citrā, prep. w. acc., *this side of.*

cīvĭs, cīvĭs, m. and f., *citizen.* CIVIL.

cīvĭtās, ātĭs, f. (civis *citizen*), *a body of citizens, a state; citizenship.*

clārŭs, ă, ŭm, CLEAR; *famous.*

claudo, claudĕrĕ, clausī, clausŭm, *close, enclose, shut;* **agmen claudĕre,** *to bring up the rear.* IN-CLUDE, EX-CLUDE.

cliens, clientĭs, m. and f., (cluens fr. clueo *hear*), CLIENT, *vassal.*

clĭpeŭs or **clўpeŭs, ī,** m., *shield.*

cloācă, ae, f., *drain, sewer;* **Cloāca maxĭma,** the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tarquinius Priscus.

coepī, coepissĕ [see *127*], *have begun, began.*

cōgĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**cum** denoting *completeness,* **agito** *weigh* in the mind), *consider, reflect upon.* COGITATE.

cognōmĕn, cognōmĭnis, n. (**cum** denoting *similarity,* (g)**nomen** *name*), *a surname.*

co-gnosco, gnoscĕrĕ, gnōvī, gnĭtŭm (**cum** denoting *completeness,* (g)**nosco** *know*), *know completely; find out, ascertain, learn, discover.* COGNITION.

cōgo, cōgĕrĕ, coēgī, coactŭm (**cum** *together,* **ago** *drive*), *drive* or *lead together, collect; compel.* COGENT.

cohors, cohortis, f., COHORT, the tenth part of a legion.

co-hortor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (**cum** *intensive,* **hortor** *urge*), *exhort, encourage.*

Collātīnŭs, ī, m., cognomen of L. Tarquinius.

collis, collis, m., *a hill.*

col-lŏco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**cum** denoting *completeness,* **loco** *place*), *lay, put, place;* **nuptum — collocāre,** *to give in marriage.* COLLOCATE, COLLOCATION.

collŏquĭŭm, ī, n. (**colloquor** *speak together*), *conference, interview.* COLLOQUY.

col-lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sŭm (**cum** *with,* **loquor** *speak*), *speak with, hold a conference.*

collŭm, ī, n., *neck.*

cŏlo, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm, *dwell; till,* CULTIVATE; *honor.*

com-būro, būrĕrĕ, bussī, bustŭm (**cum** denoting *completeness,* (b)**uro** *burn*), *burn up.* COMBUSTION.

comĭtium, ī, n. (**cum** *together,* **eo** *go*), *the comitium,* a place where the Romans assembled to vote.

commeātŭs, ūs, m. (**commeo** *come and go*), *supplies, provisions.*

com-mĕmŏro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**cum** *intensive,* **memoro** *remind of*), *call to mind; relate.* COMMEMORATION.

com-meo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**cum** denoting *frequency,* **meo** *go*), *come and go, resort;* **ad Belgas commeāre,** *to visit the Belgae.*

com-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (**cum** *together,* **mitto** *cause to go*), *join; begin;* COMMIT. COMMISSION.

commodē, adv. (**commodus** *advantageous*), *advantageously, fitly, conveniently;* **satis commŏde,** *conveniently enough, with sufficient ease.*

commŏdŭs, ă, ŭm (**cum** denoting *completeness,* **modus** *measure*), *advantageous, suitable, fit.* COMMODIOUS.

com-mŏror, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (**cum** denoting *completeness,* **moror** *tarry*), *stop; reside, stay at; remain.*

com-mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm (**cum** *intensive,* **moveo** *move*), *move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce.* COMMOTION.

com-mūnio, mūnīrĕ, mūnīvī and **mūnii, mūnītŭm** (**cum**

denoting *completeness*, **munio** *fortify*), *fortify on all sides.*

commūnĭs, commūnĕ (cum *together*, **munis** *serving*), . COMMON.

com-păro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum *intensive*, **paro** *prepare*), *prepare with zeal, make ready.*

com-pĕrio, pĕrīrĕ, pĕrī, pertŭm, *learn, discover.*

com-plector, plectī, plexŭs sŭm (cum *with*, **plector** *entwine one's self*), *embrace.*

complūrēs, complūră (rarely **complūriă**), gen. **complūrĭŭm**, adj. pl. (cum *together*, **plures** *several*) *several together, very many.*

com-porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum *together*, **porto** *bring*), *bring together, collect.* COMPORT.

cōnātŭm, ī, n. (**conor** *to attempt*), *an attempt.*

con-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, **cedo** *yield*), *grant;* CONCEDE. CONCESSION.

concĭlio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**concilium** *a calling together*), *bring together; win,* CONCILIATE.

concĭlium, ī, n. (cum *together*, **calo** *call*), COUNCIL, *assembly.*

concordiă, ae, f. (**concors** fr. **cum** denoting *similarity*, **cor** *heart*), CONCORD, *harmony.*

con-curro, currĕrĕ, cŭcurrī and **currī, cursŭm** (cum *together*, **curro** *run*), *rush together; hasten.* CONCURRENT.

condĭtio, condĭtiōnĭs, f. (**condo** *put together*), CONDITION.

condo, condĕrĕ, condĭdī, condĭtŭm (cum *together*, **do** *put*), *found, build.*

con-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (cum *together*, **duco** *lead*), *lead together, collect; hire;* CONDUCK.

con-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, col-lātŭm (cum *together*, **fero** *bring*), *bring together, collect; put off;* CONFER; **se conferre**, *to betake one's self.* CONFERENCE, COLLATE, COLLATION.

con-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, **facio** *make*), *execute, accomplish, finish.* CONFECTION.

con-firmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, **firmus** *firm*), *establish, strengthen,* CONFIRM; *encourage; assert.* CONFIRMATION.

con-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (cum *intensive*, **jacio** *throw*), *hurl.* CONJECTURE.

conjūrātio, conjūrātiōnĭs, f. (**conjūro** *swear together*), *conspiracy.*

con-jūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum *together*, **juro** *swear*), *swear together; conspire.* CONJURE.

conjux, conjŭgĭs, m. and f. (**conjungo** fr. *cum *together*, **jungo** *join*), *spouse, husband, wife.*

cōnor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, *attempt, try.* CONATIVE.

consciŭs, ă, ŭm (cum *with*, scio *know*), CONSCIOUS.

con-sensŭs, ūs, m. (consentio *think together*), *agreement*, CONSENT.

con-sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, sequor *follow*), *follow after, follow; gain: obtain.* CONSEQUENT.

con-sĕro, sĕrĕrĕ, sĕruī, sertŭm (cum *together*, sero *join*), *join together, join;* **pugnam conserĕre**, *to join battle, to fight.*

Considiŭs, ī, m., *Publius Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

con-sīdo, sīdĕrĕ, sēdī, sessŭm (cum *together*, sido *sit down*), *sit down together, encamp.*

consĭlĭŭm, -ī, n., *deliberation*, COUNSEL, *plan, design.*

con-sisto, sistĕrĕ, stĭtī, stĭtŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, sisto *place one's self*), *take a stand; keep a position; halt.* CONSIST, CONSISTENT.

con-sōlor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (cum *intensive*, solor *comfort*), *comfort greatly*, CONSOLE; *encourage, cheer.*

conspectŭs, ūs, m. (conspicio *look at*), *sight, view, presence.*

con-spĭcio, spĭcĕrĕ, spexī, spectŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, specio *look*), *behold, see.*

conspĭcor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (conspicio), *behold, see.*

constantiă, ae, f. (constans *standing firm*), *firmness, steadfastness*, CONSTANCY.

con-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭtūtŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, statuo *cause to stand*), *resolve, determine; establish, station.* CONSTITUTE, CONSTITUENT.

consuesco, consuescĕrĕ, consuēvī, consuētŭm, *become accustomed, be wont.*

consŭl, consŭlĭs, m. (akin to consulo *consult*), CONSUL; one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually.

con-sūmo, sūmĕrĕ, sumpsī, sumptŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, sumo *take*), CONSUME, *waste, destroy.* CONSUMPTION.

con-temno, temnĕrĕ, tempsī, temptŭm, *despise*, CONTEMN. CONTEMPT.

con-tendo, tendĕrĕ, tendī, tentŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, tendo *stretch*), *hasten, march in haste; contend, dispute, fight;* w. inf. *proceed, set out eagerly.*

contentio, contentiōnĭs, f. (contendo *contend*), CONTENTION, *strife.*

con-tĭneo, tĭnĕrĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (cum *together*, teneo *hold*), *hold together; encompass, hem in, bound; occupy, restrain.* CONTENT, CONTINENT.

contĭnenter, adv. (contĭnens *hanging together*), *continually, without cessation.*

con-tingo, tingĕrĕ, tĭgī, tactŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, tango *touch*), *touch on all sides; touch, border upon.* CONTACT.

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.*

contŭmēlĭă, ae, f. (**cum** *intensive*, **tumeo** *swell*), *insult, abuse; disgrace.* CONTUMELY.

con-vălesco, vălescĕrĕ, vălŭī (**cum** denoting *completeness*, **valesco** *grow strong*), *regain health, recover.* CONVALESCENT.

con-vĕnio, vĕnīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm (**cum** *together*, **venio** *come*), *come together, assemble;* CONVENE. CONVENTION.

conventŭs, ūs, m. (**convenio** *come together*), *court;* **conventum agĕre,** *to hold a court.*

con-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (**cum** denoting *completeness*, **verto** *turn*), *turn about, change;* **in fugam convertĕre,** *to put to flight.* CONVERT, CONVERSION.

con-vŏcŏ, āre, āvī, ātŭm (**cum** *together*, **voco** *call*), *call together, summon,* CONVOKE. CONVOCATION.

cōpiă, ae, f. (**cum** denoting *completeness*, **ops** *means* of any kind), *plenty, abundance, supply; number;* pl., *forces, troops; riches.*

cōpiōsŭs, ă, ŭm (**copia** *plenty*, **osus** *full of*), *wealthy, well-supplied;* COPIOUS.

cōrăm, prep. w. abl., *in the presence of; before:* adv., *openly.*

Cŏrinthŭs, ī, f., *Corinth*, a city in Greece.

corpŭs, corpŏrĭs, n., *body;* CORPSE.

cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing, flank* of an army.

cor-rōdo, rōdĕrĕ, rōsī, rōsŭm (**cum** denoting *completeness*, **rodo** *gnaw*), *gnaw to pieces, gnaw;* CORRODE.

Crassus, *M. Licinius Crassus*, a celebrated Roman.

crĕmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *burn.* CREMATION.

creo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, CREATE, *elect, choose, appoint.* CREATION.

crūs, crūrĭs, n., *leg.*

cultŭs, ūs, m. (**colo** *cultivate*), CULTURE, *civilization.*

cŭm, prep. w. abl., *with, together with.*

cŭpĭdĭtās, ātĭs, f. (**cupĭdus** *desirous*), *desire, wish, longing; eagerness, enthusiasm;* CUPIDITY.

cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, (**cupio** *desire*), *desirous, fond.*

cŭpio, cŭpĕrĕ, cŭpīvī and **cŭpiī, cupītŭm,** *desire.*

cūr, interrog. adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūră, ae, f. (**quaero** *seek*), *care.*

Cūrēs, Cūriŭm, f. pl., chief town of the Sabines.

cūriă, ae, f., *curia* or *ward; senate-house.*

Curiātiī, ōrŭm, m. pl., the name of an Alban tribe. Three brothers belonging to this tribe fought with the Horatii.

cūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**cura** *care*), *care for, attend to, cause* something to be done. CURATE.

custōs, custōdĭs, m. and f., *guard, watch.* CUSTODIAN.

D.

damno, ārĕ, āvī, atum (damnum *penalty*), CONDEMN.

dē, prep. w. abl., *down from, from; of; about, concerning; for.*

deă, ae, f. [see *11*], *goddess.*

dēbeo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm (de *from*, habeo *have*), *owe.*

dē-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (de *away*, cedo *go*), *go away, depart, retire.*

dē-certo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *intensive*, certo *contend*), *fight, contend.*

dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (decem *ten*), *tenth.*

dē-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (de *intensive*, capio *ensnare*), DECEIVE. DECEPTION.

declāro, ārē, āvī, ātŭm, *show*, DECLARE.

dē-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (de *down, away*, duco *lead*), *lead down* or *away, withdraw, lead.* DEDUCE, DEDUCT, etc.

dē-fătīgo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de denoting *completeness*, fatigo *weary*), *weary completely, fatigue.*

dē-fendo, fendĕrĕ, fendī, fensŭm, DEFEND.

dēformĭtās, ātĭs, f., DEFORMITY, *ugliness.*

deinde, adv., *then, after that.*

dē-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (de *down*, jacio *throw*), *throw* or *cast down.* DEJECTION.

dēlectŭs, ă, ŭm (deligo *choose*), *chosen.*

dēleo, dēlērĕ, dēlēvī, dēlētŭm *destroy.* DELETERIOUS.

dē-lĭbĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de denoting *completeness*, libro *weigh* in one's mind), *weigh well in mind*, DELIBERATE. DELIBERATION.

dē-lĭgo, lĭgĕrĕ, lēgī, lectŭm (de *apart*, lego *gather*), *select, choose.*

Dēmărātŭs, ī, m., a Corinthian, father of Tarquinius Priscus.

dē-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (de *down*, mitto *let go*), *let go down;* **capĭte demisso**, *with bowed head.*

dē-monstro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *intensive*, monstro *show*), *point out, show*, DEMONSTRATE; *declare.* DEMONSTRATION.

dēnī, ae, ă, num. adj. pl., *ten each.*

dēnĭquĕ, adv., *at last, finally.*

dens, dentĭs, m., *tooth.* DENTAL.

dē-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm (de *down*, pono *put*), *put down, lay aside, get rid of.* DEPOSIT, DEPONENT.

de-scendo, scendĕrĕ, scendī, scensŭm (de *down*, scando *go*), DESCEND.

de-scrībo, scrībĕrĕ, scripsī, scriptŭm, DESCRIBE; *divide.* DESCRIPTION.

dē-signo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *intensive*, signo *mark*), DESIGNATE, *describe, mean.*

de-spēro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de denoting *negation*, spero *hope*) *despair.* DESPERATION.

de-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭtūtŭm

tŭm (de *away*, **statuo** *put*), *forsake, abandon.* DESTITUTE, DESTITUTION.

dē-sŭm, de-essĕ, dē-fuī (de *away*, **sum** *be*), *be wanting.*

dētĕrĭŏr, dētĕrĭŭs [see *85*], *worse.*

dētrīmentŭm, ī, n. (detero fr. de *away*, tero *rub*), *loss; damage, injury;* DETRIMENT. DETRĪMENTAL.

deŭs, ī, m. [see *20*], *god;* DEITY.

dē-veho, vehĕrĕ, vexī, vectŭm (de *away*, veho *carry*), *carry away, bring.*

dē-vŏro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *down*, voro *swallow*), DEVOUR, *eat up.*

dextĕr, dextrā, dextrŭm, *right;* **dextrā** (sc. **manu** *hand*), *on the right.* DEXTEROUS.

dīco, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm, *say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name;* **causam dicĕre,** *to plead one's cause.* DICTUM.

diēs, diēī, m., *day.*

dif-fĕro, dif-ferrĕ, dis-tŭlī, dīlātŭm (dis *in different directions*, fero *carry*), *carry different ways; put off;* DIFFER.

difficĭlis, ĕ (dis *negative*, facilis *easy*), DIFFICULT; *impracticable.*

dignĭtās, ātis, f. (dignus *worthy*), DIGNITY, *rank; honor, office.*

dignŭs, ă, ŭm, *worthy.* DIGNIFY.

dī-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (dis *hither and thither*, mitto *send*), DISMISS.

dī-ruo, ruĕrĕ, ruī, rūtŭm (dis *asunder*, ruo *hurl down*), *destroy; overthrow; raze.*

dīs, m. and f.; **dītĕ,** n.; gen. **dītis** [**dītĭŏr, dītissĭmŭs**], *rich.*

dis-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (dis *away*, cedo *go*), *go away, depart, leave.*

dissĭdĭŭm, ī, n. (dissideo fr. dis *apart*, sedeo *sit*), *dissension.*

dis-trĭbuo, trĭbuĕrĕ, trĭbuī, trĭbūtŭm (dis *among several*, tribuo *give*), DISTRIBUTE, *divide.*

dĭtĭo, dĭtĭōnis, f., *dominion, power.*

diū, diūtĭŭs, diūtissĭmē, adv., *a long time.*

dīvĕs, gen. **dīvĭtis,** adj., *rich.*

Divĭco, ōnis, m., a distinguished man among the Helvetii.

dī-vĭdo, vĭdĕrĕ, vīsī, vīsŭm (dis *asunder*, root **vid** *separate*), DIVIDE; *separate.* DIVISION.

Divitiăcus, ī, m., a chief of the Aedui.

dīvĭtiae, ārŭm, f. pl. (dives *rich*), *riches, wealth.*

do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătŭm, *give.*

dŏceo, dŏcērĕ, dŏcuī, doctŭm *teach, instruct; inform.* DOCTOR.

dŏlŏr, dŏlōris, m. (doleo *feel pain*), *grief, sorrow, trouble.* DOLOROUS.

dŏlus, ī, m., *fraud, deceit, stratagem.*

dŏmo, ārĕ, dŏmuī, dŏmĭtŭm, *subdue, conquer.*

dŏmŭs, **ūs** and **ī** [see *97*], *house;* **dŏmī,** *at home;* **dŏmŭm,** *home,*

homeward; **dŏmō**, *from home.* DOME.

dŭbĭtātio, ōnis, f. (**dubĭto** *waver in opinion*), *doubt, hesitation.*

dŭbĭŭs, ă, ŭm, *doubtful.* DUBIOUS.

dŭcentī, ae, ă, num. adj. pl. (**duo** *two*, **centum** *hundred*), *two hundred.*

dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm, *lead, draw; suppose, consider; put off.* DUCT, AQUEDUCT.

dulcis, dulcĕ, *sweet, pleasant.* DULCET.

dum, conj., *while, as long as; until.*

Dumnŏrix, Dumnŏrĭgis, m., one of the Aedui.

duŏ, ae, ŏ, num. adj. [see *108*], *two.*

dux, dŭcis, m. and f., *leader, guide; commander, general.*

E.

ēdŭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**edūco** *bring up* a child), EDUCATE. EDUCATION.

ē-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (ex *out*, **duco** *lead*), *lead out, lead forth.* EDUCE, EDUCTION.

effēmĭno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**ex** denoting *change* of nature, **femina** *woman*), *enervate.* EFFEMINATE.

ef-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (ex *out*, **facio** *make*), EFFECT, *accomplish.*

ef-fundo, funderĕ, fūdī, fūsŭm (ex *out*, **fundo** *pour*), *pour out, overflow.* EFFUSION.

Egĕrĭă, ae, f., a nymph, celebrated in Roman mythology as the wife and instructress of Numa.

ĕgŏ, pers. pron. [see *112*], *I.*

ē-grĕdior, grĕdī, gressŭs sŭm (ex *out*, **gradior** *go*), *go out, depart.* EGRESS.

ē-lābor, lābī, lapsŭs sŭm (ex *out*, **labor** *slip*), *glide away, escape.* ELAPSE.

ē-mĭneo, mĭnērĕ, mĭnuī (ex *out*, **mineo** *jut*), *rise above; appear.* EMINENT.

ĕmo, ĕmĕrĕ, ēmī, emptŭm, *buy.*

ĕnim, conj., *for.*

ē-nuncio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *out of* a place, **nuncio** *carry a report*), *divulge, report.*

eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ĭtŭm [see *126*], *go.*

eō, adv., *to that place, thither, there*; **eō — quō**, *the — the.*

ĕquĕs, ĕquĭtis, m. (**equus** *horse*, **eo** *go*), *rider, horseman; cavalryman*; pl., *cavalry.*

ĕquestĕr, tris, trĕ (**eques** *horseman*), *of horsemen, of cavalry.* EQUESTRIAN.

ĕquĭtātŭs, ūs, m. (**equĭto** *to be a horseman*), *cavalry.*

ĕquŭs, ī, m., *horse.*

ē-rĭpio, rĭpĕrĕ, rĭpuī, reptŭm (ex *out*, **rapio** *tear*), *tear out* or *from, take from.*

ĕt, conj., *and, even*; **ĕt — ĕt**, *both — and.*

ĕtiăm, conj. (**et-jam**), *and also, also, even.*

et-sī, conj., *even if, although.*

Ētrūriă, ae, f., a country of Italy, modern Tuscany.

ē-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (ex *out*, verto *turn*), *turn out; overturn, destroy.*

ē-vŏlo, āre, āvī, ātŭm (ex *out*, volo *fly*), *fly out, fly away.*

ex, ē, prep. w. abl. [see LN. IV., VY., 1], *out of, from among; from; of.*

exemplŭm, ī, n. (exĭmo fr. ex *out*, emo *take*), EXAMPLE.

ex-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (ex *out*, eo *go*), *go out, go forth, depart;* pass., *be gone.*

exercĭtātio, ōnis, f. (exercĭto *to exercise*), *practice.*

exercĭtŭs, ūs, m. (exerceo *exercise*), *army.* See **agmen**

ex-ĭgo, ĭgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm (ex *out*, ago *drive*), *drive out, lead out, spend;* **aestas exacta est**, *the summer is gone.* EXACTION.

existĭmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *think, suppose; believe, imagine.*

exĭtiŭm, ī, n. (exeo *go out*), *destruction, ruin.*

ex-ōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *effectually*, oro *entreat*), *move by entreaty; obtain by entreaty.*

expĕdītŭs, ă, ŭm (expedio fr. ex *away from*, pes *foot*), *unincumbered, passable.* EXPEDITIOUS.

ex-plĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *out*, plico *fold*), *unfold, explain, spread.* EXPLICATION.

explōrātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (explōro *explore*), *spy, scout.*

ex-pugno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *effectually*, pugno *fight*), *take by assault: storm, capture.*

ex-specto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *very much*, specto *look for*), EXPECT, *long for; wait.* EXPECTATION.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, beyond.*

ex-trăho, trăhĕrĕ, traxī, tractŭm (ex *out*, traho *draw*), *draw out,* EXTRACT. EXTRACTION.

extrēmŭs, ă, ŭm [see *85*], *furthermost, most distant,* EXTREME.

ex-ūro, ūrĕrĕ, ussī, ustŭm (ex *entirely*, uro *burn*), *burn up.*

F.

fābŭlă, ae, f. (fari *to speak*), *story,* FABLE.

făcĭlĕ, făcĭlĭŭs, făcillĭmē, adv. (facĭlis *easy*), *easily, readily, without difficulty.*

făcĭlĭs, făcĭlĕ (facio *do*, ilis denoting *capability*), *easy, practicable.* FACILE.

făcio, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm, *do, make; incite, furnish;* **iter făcĕre**, *to march, to journey.*

factio, factiōnis, f. (facio *take part* with one), FACTION, *political party.*

factŭm, ī, n. (facio *do*), *deed, act.*

făcultās, ātis, f. (facilis which see), *ability, opportunity.* FACULTY.

fămĭlĭă, ae, f. (**famulus** *servant*), *household*, FAMILY.

fămĭlĭārĭtās, ātĭs, f. (**familiāris** *intimate*), *intimacy, friendship*, FAMILIARITY.

fămŭlă, ae, f., *maid, maid-servant.*

fauce, abl., f. sing., *throat*; **faucēs, fauciŭm,** f. pl., *throat.*

Faustŭlŭs, ī, m., the shepherd by whom Romulus and Remus were brought up.

fāveo, fāvēre, fāvī, fautŭm, *favor, show favor.*

fēlēs and **fēlĭs, fēlĭs,** f., *cat.* FELINE.

fēlĭcĭtĕr, adv. (**felix** *happy*), *happily, successfully.*

fēlix, gen. **fēlĭcĭs,** adj (**feo** *produce*), *happy, fortunate.* FELICITOUS.

fēmĭnă, ae, f., *female, woman.* FEMININE.

fĕrē, adv., *almost, nearly.*

fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātŭm, *bear, bring, carry; endure.*

fĕrŭs, ă, ŭm, *wild, uncultivated*: **fĕră, ae,** f., *wild beast.*

ferrŭm, ī, n., *iron; sword.*

festŭm, ī, n., FEAST.

fĭdēs, fĭdēī, f. (**fido** *trust*), *faith, confidence; pledge, promise: protection.* FIDELITY.

fīlĭă, ae, f. [see *11*], *daughter.*

fīlĭŭs, ī, m., *son.*

fīnio, fīnīre, fīnīvī, fīnītŭm (**finis** *end*), *end*, FINISH.

fīnĭs, fīnĭs, m., *end, limit, boundary*; pl., *territory.* FINAL.

fīnĭtĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (**finis** *boundary*), *neighboring*: **fīnĭtĭmī, ōrŭm,** m. pl., *neighbors.*

fīo, fĭĕrī, factŭs sŭm [see *126*], *be made; become; occur, happen.*

firmĭtĕr, adv. (**firmus** *firm*), *firmly, securely.*

flāgĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *demand.*

flammă, ae, f., FLAME.

fleo, flēre, flēvī, flētŭm, *weep.*

flens, gen. **flentĭs,** *weeping.*

flōs, flōrĭs, m., *flower.* FLORAL.

flūmĕn, flūmĭnĭs, n. (**fluo** *flow*), *river.*

fluo, fluĕre, fluxī, fluxŭm, *flow.* FLUENT, FLUENCY.

fŏdio, fŏdĕre, fōdī, fossŭm, *dig.* FOSSIL.

foedŭs, foedĕrĭs, n., *league, treaty.* FEDERAL.

formīdo, formīdĭnĭs, f., *fear, terror.*

formōsĭtās, ātĭs, f., *beauty.*

fortassĕ, adv. (**fors** *chance*), *perhaps.*

fortĕ, adv. (**fors** *chance*), *accidentally, by chance.*

fortĭs, fortĕ, *brave, bold, courageous, valiant; strong.*

fortĭtĕr, fortiŭs, fortissĭmē, adv. (**fortis** *brave*), *bravely, valiantly.*

fortūnă, ae, f., FORTUNE.

fōrŭm, ī, n., *market-place*; FORUM; *court of justice.*

fossă, ae, f. (**fodio** *dig*), *ditch, trench.*

frātĕr, frātrĭs, m., *brother.* FRATERNAL.

frīgŭs, frīgŏrĭs, n., *cold, frost.*

frūmentārĭŭs, ă, ŭm (**frumentum** *corn*), *of corn;* **res frumentaria**, *supplies.*

frūmentŭm, ī, n., *corn, grain.*

fruor, fruī, fructŭs sŭm, *enjoy* [see ***104***].

fŭgă, ae, f., *flight.*

fŭgio, fūgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm, *flee; escape.* FUGITIVE.

fulmĕn, fulmĭnĭs, n. (**fulgeo** *flash*), *thunder-bolt, lightning.* FULMINATE.

fūnŭs, fūnĕrĭs, n., *funeral procession, burial,* FUNERAL.

G.

Găbīnĭŭs, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius*, a Roman consul.

Galliă, ae, f., *Gaul;* it embraced modern France, Belgium, that part of the Netherlands south of the Rhine, the provinces of Germany west of the Rhine, and a large part of Switzerland; all this was known as **Gallia ulterior**, *farther Gaul*, and as **Gallia transalpīna**, *Gaul across the Alps*, i. e. from Rome: the northern part of modern Italy was known as **Gallia citerior**, *hither Gaul*, and as **Gallia cisalpīna**, *Gaul this side the Alps*, i. e. towards Rome.

gallīnă, ae, f., *hen.*

Gallŭs, ī, m., *a Gaul.*

Garumnă, ae, f., a river of Gaul, *the Garonne.*

gĕmĭnŭs, ă, ŭm, *double;* **gemĭni filii**, *twin-sons.*

gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, m., *son-in-law.*

Gĕnāvă, ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on Lake Lemannus, modern GENEVA.

gens, gentĭs, f. (**gigno** *beget*), *nation, tribe.* GENTILE.

gĕnŭs, gĕnĕrĭs, n., *birth, kind, race.*

Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., THE GERMANS.

gĕro, gĕrĕrĕ, gessī, gestŭm, *bear, carry; carry on, wage;* pass. *happen, take place.*

gigno, gignĕrĕ, gĕnuī, gĕnĭtŭm, *beget; bear;* pass., *be born.*

glōriă, ae, f., GLORY, *renown.*

glōrior, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (**gloria** *glory*), *boast,* GLORY.

grădŭs, ūs, m. (**gradior** *to step*), *step, stair.* GRADE.

Graecŭs, ă, ŭm, GRECIAN, GREEK.

grātiă, ae, f. (**gratus** *beloved, dear*), *favor; influence, popularity;* GRACE; pl., *thanks.*

grātŭlor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, CONGRATULATE.

grăvĭs, grăvĕ, *heavy, burdensome;* GRIEVOUS, *painful, severe.* GRIEF.

grăvĭtĕr, grăviŭs, grăvissĭmē, adv. (**gravis** *heavy*), *heavily; grievously, severely.*

grūs, gruĭs, m. and f., *crane* (a bird).

H.

hăbeo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, HAVE, *hold; regard, consider; deliver.*

Harūdēs, ŭm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany.

hastă, ae, f., *spear, lance.*

haud, adv., *not at all, by no means.*

haedŭs and **hoedŭs, ī,** m., *kid, a young goat.*

Helvētiī, ōrŭm, m. pl., an ancient people occupying a large part of the country now called Switzerland.

Helvētiŭs, ă, ŭm, *of the Helvetii.*

herbĭdŭs, ă, ŭm (herba *grass*), *grassy.*

hĭbernă, ōrŭm, n. pl. (hiems *winter*), *winter-quarters;* [properly an adjective with **castra** understood.] HIBERNATE.

hĭc, haec, hŏc, *this;* pl., *these* [see ***113***].

hīc, adv. (**hic** *this*), *here, in this place.*

hiĕmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (hiems *winter*), *pass the winter.*

hinc, adv. (**hic** *this*), *hence, from this place.*

Hispāniă, ae, f., SPAIN.

hŏdiē, adv. (contracted fr. **hoc** and **die,** *on this day*), *to-day.*

hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs, m. and f., *human being, person, man.* [See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.]

hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs, m., HONOR.

hōră, ae, f., HOUR.

Horātiī, ōrum, m. pl., three Roman brothers who fought against the Curiatii.

hortor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, EXHORT, *urge.* HORTATORY.

hospĭtĭŭm, ĭ, n. (hospes *guest*), HOSPITALITY. HOSPITAL, HOSPITABLE.

hostĭs, hostĭs, m. and f., *enemy, public enemy;* [**inimīcus** is a *personal enemy.*] HOSTILE.

hūc, adv. (**hic** *this*), *hither, to this place.*

hūmānĭtās, ātĭs, f. (**humanus** *of* or *belonging to man*), HUMANITY, *refinement, culture.*

I.

ĭbĭ, adv. (**is**), *there, in that place; then.*

ĭco, ĭcĕrĕ, ĭcī, ictŭm, *strike;* **foedus ĭcĕre,** *to ratify* or *make a treaty.* ICTUS.

ĭdem, eădem, ĭdem (**is** and dem. suffix **dem**), *the same* [see ***113***].

ĭdōneŭs, ă, ŭm, *fit, suitable.*

ĭgĭtŭr, conj., *therefore.*

ignĭs, ĭs, m., *fire.*

illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that, he;* pl., *those.*

immĕrĭtŭs, ă, ŭm (in *negative*, **merĭtus** *deserving*), *not deserving; not deserved.*

immortālĭs, immortāle (in *negative*, **mortālis** *mortal*), IMMORTAL.

immortālĭtās, ātĭs, f. (**immortālis** *immortal*), IMMORTALITY.

impĕdīmentŭm, ī, n. (**impedio** fr. **in** *in the way of,* **pedes** *feet*),

hindrance. pl., *baggage* of an army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [**sarcĭnae** are packs carried by the soldiers.] IMPEDIMENT.

im-pendeo, pendēre, no perf. nor sup. (in *over*, **pendeo** *hang*), *overhang;* IMPEND.

impĕrātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (**impero** *command*), *commander-in-chief, general.*

impĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm (in *negative*, **perītus** *skilled*), *unskilled, inexperienced.*

impĕrĭŭm, ĭ, n. (**impero** *command*), *command; government;* EMPIRE, *supreme power.*

impĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in *upon*, **paro** *put*), *give orders, order: command; rule.*

impĕtŭs, ūs, m., *attack, assault.* IMPETUS.

im-plōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *beseech, entreat,* IMPLORE.

im-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtŭm (in *upon*, **pono** *place*), *place upon; levy upon.* IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.

im-porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in *into*, **porto** *bring*), *bring into,* IMPORT.

ĭn, prep. w. acc and abl.; w. acc., *into, to, towards, against;* w. abl., *in, on, upon, among.*

inānĭs, ināně, *empty; vain, ineffectual.*

incendo, incendĕrĕ, incendī, incensŭm, *set on fire, burn.* INCENDIARY.

inchoo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *begin.*

in-cĭdo, cĭdĕrĕ, cĭdī (in *into*, **cado** *fall*), *fall into* or *upon; chance to meet with.* INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.

in-cĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in without additional force, **cito** *put in quick motion*), *instigate, encourage;* INCITE.

in-cŏlo, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm (in *in*, **colo** *dwell*), *inhabit, dwell.*

incolŭmĭs, ĕ, *unhurt, safe.*

incommŏdŭm, ĭ, (**incommŏdus** fr. **in** *negative*, **commŏdus** *convenient*), *inconvenience, misfortune, defeat.*

incrēdĭbĭlĭs, ĕ (**in** *negative*, **credo** *believe*, **bilis** denoting *capability*), INCREDIBLE; *extraordinary.*

incursio, ōnĭs, f. (**incurro** fr. **in** *into, against;* **curro** *run*), *attack;* INCURSION.

in-cūso, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in *against*, **causa** *cause*), *censure, blame.*

in-dīco, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm (in *among*, **dico** *speak*), *declare, proclaim.*

indignŭs, ă, ŭm (in *negative*, **dignus** *worthy*), *unworthy.*

indŏlēs, ĭs, f., *disposition, nature.*

in-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (in *into*, **duco** *lead*), *lead into;* INDUCE.

indulgeo, indulgĕrĕ, indulsī, indultŭm, *favor, show favor;* INDULGE.

in-duo, duĕrĕ, duī, dūtŭm, *put on, dress; clothe.*

inermis, e (in *negative,* **arma** *arms*), *unarmed; defenceless.*

inferiŏr, inferiŭs, *lower.* INFERIOR [see *85*].

in-fĕro, in-ferrĕ, in-tŭlī, illātŭm (in *into, upon,* **fero** *bring*), *bring into* or *upon, make upon.* INFER, INFERENCE.

in-fluo, fluĕrĕ, fluxī, fluxŭm (in *into,* **fluo** *flow*), *flow into, empty.* INFLUENCE, INFLUX.

in-frendeo, frendērĕ, *gnash* with the teeth.

ingens, gen. **ingentis,** *vast, enormous, large.*

in-haereo, haerērĕ, haesī, haesŭm (in *to, in;* **haereo** *stick*), *stick* or *cleave to* or *in.*

in-hio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in *for,* **hio** *gape*), *gape for, desire.*

inimīcŭs, ă, ŭm (in *negative,* **amicus** *friendly*), *unfriendly, hostile;* INIMICAL. See **hostis.**

initium, ī, n. (**ineo** fr. **in** *upon,* **eo** *enter*), *beginning.* INITIAL.

in-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (in *into,* **jacio** *throw*), *throw into; inspire, infuse.* INJECT.

injūriă, ae, f. (**injurius** fr. **in** *negative,* **jus** *right*), INJURY, *wrong; injustice, damage, insult.*

in-nascor, nascī, natŭs sŭm (in *in,* **nascor** *be born*), *spring up in.*

inŏpiă, ae, f. (**inŏpes** fr. **in** *negative,* **opes** *resources*), *want, scarcity.*

inquam and **inquio,** defective verb, *say.*

insĭdiae, ārŭm, f. pl., *treachery, deceit.* INSIDIOUS.

insignis, insignĕ (in *upon,* **signum** *mark*), *remarkable, extraordinary;* **insignĕ, is,** n., *sign.*

in-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭtūtŭm, *appoint,* INSTITUTE; *train up, instruct.*

institūtŭm, ī, n., *custom;* INSTITUTION.

in-struo, struĕrĕ, struxī, structŭm (in without additional force, **struo** *arrange*), *arrange, form, draw up.* INSTRUCT, INSTRUCTIVE, INSTRUCTION.

intel-lĭgo (lĕgo), lĭgĕrĕ, lexī, lectŭm (inter *between,* **lego** *choose*), *understand, know.* INTELLIGENT.

intĕr, prep. w. acc., *between, among.*

inter-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (inter *between,* **cedo** *go*), *intervene.* INTERCEDE, INTERCESSION.

inter-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (inter *between,* **capio** *take*), *usurp; take away fraudulently;* INTERCEPT.

inter-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (inter *between,* **facio** *make*), *kill, slay.*

inter-ĭmo, ĭmĕrĕ, ēmī, emptŭm, *kill, put to death.*

interněcio, ōnis, f. (**interněco** fr. **inter** *completely,* **neco** *kill*), *slaughter.*

interregnŭm, ī, n. (**inter** *between*, **regnum** *reign*), INTERREGNUM.

inter-sŭm, esse, fuī (**inter** *between*, **sum** *be*), *be between, intervene.*

intervallŭm, ī, n. (**inter** *between*, **vallum** *rampart*), INTERVAL, *distance.*

intro, āre, āvī, ātŭm, *enter.*

in-tueor, tuērī, tuĭtŭs sŭm (**in** *upon, at*; **tueor** *look*), *look at* or *upon.*

intŭs, adv., *within.*

invĭdiă, ae, f. (**invideo** *look askance at*), ENVY, *hatred.*

invītŭs, ă, ŭm, *unwilling*; **sē invīto**, *against his will.*

ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm [see *113*], *self; himself, herself, itself; very*; **ipse rex**, *the very king.*

irrētio, īre, īvī, ītŭm (**in** *in*, **rete** *net*), *entangle, ensnare.*

ir-rīdeo, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsŭm (**in** *at*, **rideo** *laugh*), *laugh at, deride.*

irrīto, āre, āvī, ātŭm, *provoke, incite*, IRRITATE. IRRITATION.

ĭs, eă, ĭd, *he, her, it; this; that* [see *113*].

Isocrătēs, ĭs, m., a celebrated Greek orator and rhetorician.

ĭtă, adv. (**is**), *so, thus, in this manner, as follows.*

Itălĭă, ae, f., ITALY.

Itălŭs, ă, ŭm, *Italian.*

ĭtă-quĕ, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

ĭtĕm, adv. (**is**), *in like manner, likewise.*

ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, n. (**eo** *go*), *journey; march; way, road, route*; **iter facĕre**, *to march.* ITINERANT.

ĭtĕrŭm, adv. (**is**), *again, a second time.*

J.

jăceo, ērĕ, uī, jăcĭtŭm, *lie.*

jăcio, jăcĕrĕ, jēcī, jactŭm, *throw, hurl, cast.*

jăm, adv., *now, already.*

Jānĭcŭlŭm, ī, n., a hill across the Tiber from Rome.

jŭbeo, jŭbērĕ, jussī, jussŭm, *command, order.*

jūdĭcĭŭm, ī, n., (**judex** *judge*), *judgment; trial; sentence; decision.* JUDICIAL.

jūdĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**jus** *law*, **dico** *point out*), JUDGE; *determine, conclude; think.* ADJUDICATE.

jŭgŭm, ī, n. (**jungo** *join*), *yoke; ridge, summit:* in war a frame made of two upright spears supporting a third in a horizontal position, under which a conquered army was made to pass in token of subjection.

jūmentŭm, ī, n., *beast of burden* as a horse or an ox.

Juppĭter and **Jūpĭter, Jŏvis**, m., son of Saturn, father of gods and king of men.

Jūră, ae, m., *the Jura*, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and forming the western boundary of Switzerland.

jūs, jūris, n., *right, law.* JURIST.

jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n., *oath* [see *110*].

jussū, m. abl. (**jubeo** *command*), *by command.*

justus, ā, um (**jus** *law*, suffix **tus** denoting *fulness*), JUST, *right.*

jūvo, jūvārē, jūvī, jūtum, *help, aid, assist.* AD-JUTANT.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Roman praenomen.

Lăbiēnus, ī m., one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war.

lăbŏr, lăbōris, m., LABOR, *toil.*

lacrĭmă, ae, f., *tear.*

lăcus, ūs, m., LAKE.

laetor, ārī, ātus sum (**laetus** *joyful*), *rejoice, exult.*

laetus, ă, um, *joyful.*

lănio, ārē, āvī, ātum, *tear in pieces.*

lăpis, lăpĭdis, m., *stone.* LAPIDARY.

lăqueus, ī, m., *noose, snare.*

Lārentiă, ae, f. See **Acca.**

largītio, ōnis, f. (**largior** *give bountifully*), *liberality.*

lātē, adv. (**latus** *broad*), *widely, extensively.*

Lătīnus, ī, m., an ancient king of the Laurentes, a people of Italy.

latro, latrōnis, m., *robber.*

latro, ārē, āvī, ātum, *bark, bark at.*

lătus, lătĕris, n., *side; flank.* LATERAL.

lātus, ă, um, *broad, wide; large, spacious.* LAT-ITUDE.

Lāvīniă, ae, f., daughter of Latinus and second wife of Aenēas.

Lāvīnium, ī, n., a city in Italy built by Aenēas.

lēgātio, ōnis, f. (**lego** *send on an embassy*), *embassy.* LEGATION.

lēgātus, ī, m. (**lego** *send as a representative*), *ambassador, envoy,* LEGATE; *lieutenant.*

lĕgio, lĕgiōnis, f. (**lego** *levy*), LEGION, a body of infantry varying in number from 4000 to 6000, and generally accompanied by about 300 cavalrymen.

lĕgo, lĕgĕrĕ, lēgī, lectum, *choose.*

Lĕmannus, ī, m., Lake Leman or Geneva in Switzerland.

lēnitas, ātis, f., *smoothness.*

leo, leōnis, m., LION.

lētālis, ĕ (**letum** *death*; suffix **alis**, *belonging to*), *fatal, deadly.*

lēvĭtās, ātis, f. (**lēvis** *smooth*), *smoothness.*

lĕvĭtās, ātis, f. (**lĕvis** *light*), *lightness.* LEVITY.

lex, lēgis, f., *law.* LEGAL.

lĭbĕr, lĭbĕră, lĭbĕrum, *free.*

lĭbĕrālĭtās, ātis, f. (**liberālis** fr. **liber** *free*), LIBERALITY, *generosity.*

lĭbĕrē, lĭbĕriŭs, adv. (**liber** *free*), *freely, unreservedly.*

lĭbĕrī, ōrum, m. pl., *children.*

lĭbĕro, ārē, āvī, ātum (**liber** *free*), *to free,* LIBERATE.

līceor, līcērī, līcĭtŭs sŭm, *bid* at an auction.

līcĕt, līcērĕ, līcuĭt or **līcĭtŭm est,** *it is permitted, allowed; one may* [see *128* and LN. LXIX., Examples 2 – 5].

līcĕt, *although.*

Lingŏnēs, ŭm, m. pl, a people in Northeastern Gaul.

linguă, ae, f., *tongue;* LANGUAGE. LINGUIST, LINGUAL.

Liscŭs, ī, m., a magistrate among the Aedui.

littĕră and **lītĕră, ae,** f. (**lino** *besmear*), LETTER of the alphabet; pl., *letter, epistle.* LITERATURE.

lŏcŭs, ī, m. [pl. **loci** and **loca**], *place.* LOCAL, LOCALITY.

longē, longiŭs, longissĭmē, adv. (**longus** *long*), *far, by far;* often used to strengthen superlatives.

longissĭmē, adv., *very far.*

longĭtūdo, ĭnĭs, f. (**longus** *long*), *length.* LONGITUDE.

longŭs, ă, ŭm, *long.*

lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sŭm, *speak, talk.* LOQUACIOUS.

Lūcius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Lūcrētiă, ae, f., a Roman matron, wife of Collatīnus.

lūdŭs, ī, m., *play, game.*

lŭpă, ae, f., *she-wolf.*

lŭpŭs, ī, m., *wolf.*

lustro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *review.*

lux, lūcis, f. (**luceo** *shine*), *light.*

lўră, ae, f., *lyre.*

M.

M., abbreviation of *Marcus,* a Roman praenomen.

M'., abbreviation of *Mānius,* a Roman praenomen.

măgis, maxĭmē, adv., *more, rather.*

măgistrātŭs, ūs, m. (**magister** fr. **mag-,** root of **magnus,** signifying *to be great*), *magistrate.*

magnĭtūdo, ĭnĭs, f. (**magnus** *great*), *size,* MAGNITUDE.

magnŭs, ă, ŭm, *great, large, big, mighty.* MAGNI-.

mājestās ātĭs, f., MAJESTY, *dignity.*

mājŏr, mājŭs, gen. **mājōrĭs** (comp. of **magnus**), *larger, greater, bigger;* **mājōrēs, ŭm,** m. pl., *ancestors.* MAJOR.

mălĕ, pējŭs, pessĭmē, adv., *badly, ill, wickedly.*

mălĕ-dīco, dīcĕrĕ, dīxī, dictŭm (male *ill,* dico *speak*), *speak ill of, revile, rail at;* [with dat.] MALEDICTION.

mălĕfĭcĭŭm, ī, n. [**maleficus** *doing evil*), *mischief, damage.*

mălĕfĭcŭs, ă, ŭm (male *wickedly,* facio *do*), *wicked;* **mălĕfĭcŭs, ī,** m., *an evil-doer.*

mālo, mallĕ, māluī (**magis** *more,* volo *be willing*), *be more willing, choose rather, prefer* [see *125*].

mălŭs, ă, ŭm, *bad, wicked, evil, destructive.*

măneo, mănērĕ, mansī, mansŭm, *stay,* RE-MAIN.

mandātŭm, ī, n. (**mando** fr. **manus** *hand*, do *put; put in one's hand*), *charge, order, command.* MANDATE.

mănŭs, ūs, f., *hand; force* of soldiers. MANUFACTURE.

Manĭus, ī, m. See **M'.**

Marcĭus, ī, m., a Roman name.

Marcŭs, ī, m. See **M.**

mărĕ, mărĭs, n., *sea.*

mărītŭs, ī, m. (**marīta** *wife*), belonging to a wife, *husband.*

Mars, Martĭs, m., son of Jupiter and Juno, and god of war. MARTIAL.

massă, ae, f., MASS, *lump.*

mātĕr, mātrĭs, f., MOTHER; *matron.*

mātrĭmōnium, ī, n. (**mater** *mother*), *marriage;* **in matrimonium dare,** *to give in marriage;* **in matrimonium dūcĕre,** *to marry.* MATRIMONY.

Matrŏna, ae, m., a river in Gaul, *the* modern *Marne.*

mātūrĕ, adv. (**matūrus** *ripe*), *early, soon.*

mātūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *hasten, make haste.*

mātūrŭs, ă, ŭm, *ripe,* MATURE.

mĕdiocrĭtĕr, adv. (**mediocris** fr. **medius** denoting *a middle state*), *moderately;* **non mediocrĭter,** *exceedingly.*

mĕdiŭs, ă, ŭm, *in the middle* or *midst; in the middle of; middle, central.*

mĕl, mellĭs, n., *honey.* MELLIFLUENT.

mĕlĭŏr, mĕlĭŭs, gen. **mĕlĭōrĭs** (comp. of **bonus**), *better.*

mĕmĭnī, mĕmĭnissĕ, *remember* [see ***127***].

mĕmŏr, gen. **mĕmŏrĭs,** *mindful of, mindful.*

mĕmŏriă, ae, f. (**memor** *mindful of*), MEMORY, *recollection, remembrance.*

mens, mentĭs, f., *mind.* See **anĭmus.** MENTAL.

mensĭs, mensĭs, m., *month.*

mercātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (**mercor** *to trade*), *trader,* MERCHANT.

mercēs, mercēdĭs, f., *wages, hire, reward, price.*

mĕreo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, *deserve, acquire.*

mĕrĭtŭm, ī, n., *desert.* MERIT.

Messālă, ae, m., a Roman name.

mētior, mētīrī, mensŭs sŭm, MEASURE, *deal out.*

Mettiŭs, ī, m., *Mettius Fufetius,* an Alban general, put to death by Tullus Hostilius.

meŭs, ă, ŭm, *my, mine.*

mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs, m., *soldier.*

mīlĭtārĭs, ĕ (**miles** *soldier*, **aris** *belonging to*), MILITARY; **res militāris,** *military science.*

millĕ, pl. **mīlia, mīliŭm,** *thousand* [see ***108***].

milviŭs, ī, m., *kite* (a bird).

mĭnĭmē [**parvē, mĭnŭs, mĭnĭmē**], adv., *least, by no means.*

mĭnĭmŭs, ă, ŭm, *least* [see ***85***].

mĭnŏr, mĭnŭs, *smaller, less* [see ***85***]; **minor natu,** *younger.*

mĭnuo, mĭnuĕrĕ, mĭnuī, mĭnūtŭm, DI-MINISH. DIMINUTION.

mĭnŭs, adv. *less.* See **minīme.**

mīror, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, AD-MIRE; *wonder at.*

mīrŭs, ă, ŭm (**miror** *wonder at*), *wonderful.*

mĭsĕr, mĭsĕrā, mĭsĕrŭm, *wretched, pitiable, lamentable,* MISERABLE.

mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm, *send.*

moeniă, moeniŭm, n. pl., *walls* of a city.

mollio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (**mollis** *soft*), *soften, subdue.*

mŏneo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, *remind; advise,* AD-MONISH.

mons, montĭs, m., MOUNTAIN, MOUNT.

monstro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**monstrum** *a divine omen*), *show, point out.* DE-MONSTRATE.

morbŭs, ī, m., *disease.* MORBID.

mŏrior, mŏrī and **mŏrīrī, mortuŭs sŭm,** *die.*

mŏror, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, *tarry, delay, hinder*

mors, mortĭs, f., *death.* MORTAL.

mōs, mōrĭs, m., *custom, manner; usage;* pl., *character.* MORAL.

mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm, MOVE; *excite:* **castra movēre,** *to break up camp.*

mŭliĕr, mŭliĕrĭs, f., *woman.*

multĭtūdo, ĭnĭs, f (**multus** *much*), MULTITUDE.

multŭs, ă, ŭm, *much, many a;* pl. *many.* MULTI-PLY.

mūnio, īrĕ, īvi, ītŭm (**moenia** *wall, rampart*), *fortify.*

mūnītio, ōnĭs, f. (**munio** *fortify*), *fortification.* MUNITION.

mūnŭs, mūnĕrĭs, n., *gift, reward.* RE-MUNER-ATE.

mūs, mūrĭs, m., *mouse.*

muscŭlŭs, m. (**mus**), *a little mouse.*

N.

năm, conj., *for.*

nascor, nascī, nātŭs sŭm, *be born.* NASCENT.

nātū, abl. sing. m., *by birth;* **minor natu,** *younger.*

nātūră, ae, f. (**nascor** *be born*), NATURE.

nātŭs, ă, ŭm (**nascor** *be born*), *old.*

nāvĭs, nāvĭs, f., *ship.* NAV-AL, NAVI-GATE.

nē, adv., *not;* conj., *that not; that.*

nĕ, interrog. particle; is appended to first word of the question and asks for information.

nĕc. See **nĕquĕ.**

nĕco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *kill, put to death.*

nĕgo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *deny, refuse.* NEGATION.

nĕgōtiŭm, ī, n. (**nec** *not,* **otium** *leisure*), *business;* **quid negōti?** *what business?* NEGOTIATE.

nēmo, nēmĭnĭs, m. and f. (**ne** *not,* **homo** *a man*), *no one, nobody.*

nĕpōs, nĕpōtis, m., *grandson.* NEPOTISM.

Neptūnŭs, ī, m., *Neptune*, god of the sea.

nēquāquăm, adv., *by no means.*

nĕquĕ, nĕc, conj., *and not*; **nĕquĕ — nĕquĕ**, *neither — nor.*

nervŭs, ī, m., NERVE, *vigor, energy.*

nescio, īrĕ, īvī and **iī, ītŭm** (ne *not*, scio *know*), *not know.*

neutĕr, neutrā, neutrŭm (ne *not*, **uter** *one or the other*), *neither* [see **24**]. NEUTER.

nīhĭl, n. indecl., *nothing.*

nīhĭlō mĭnŭs, adv., *none the less, nevertheless.*

nīhĭlŭm, ī, n., *nothing.*

nĭsī, conj. (ne *not*, **si** *if*), *if not, unless, except.*

nītor, nītī, nīsŭs or **nixus sŭm**, *strive, endeavor.*

nōbĭlis, nōbĭlĕ (nosco *know*, **bilis** denoting *capability*), *well known*, NOBLE, *of high rank.*

nōbĭlĭtās, ātis, f. (**nobĭlis** *noble*), NOBILITY.

nōlo, nollĕ, nōluī (**non** *not*, **volo** *willing*), *be unwilling.*

nōmĕn, nōmĭnis, n., NAME.

nōn, adv., *not.*

nonnĕ, interrog. particle, expects the answer *yes.*

non-nullŭs, ă, ŭm, *some one*; **nonnullī, ōrŭm**, m. pl., *several persons.*

Norēiă, ae, f., a town in Noricum.

Norĭcŭs, ă, ŭm, *of Noricum*, a country lying between the Upper Danube and Eastern Alps.

nōs, pers. pron., *we* [see **112**].

nostĕr, nostră, nostrŭm, *our, ours.*

nŏto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**nota**, *a mark*), *mark.* NOTE, NOTATION.

Noviodūnŭm, ī, n., the name of several cities in Gaul.

nŏvŭs, ă, ŭm, *new, strange; recent, fresh*; **novae res**, *revolution*; **agmen novissĭmum**, *the rear.* NOVEL.

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūbēs, nūbĭs, f., *cloud.*

nūbo, nūbĕrĕ, nupsī, nuptŭm, *veil herself* for the bridegroom, *marry* [of a bride]. NUPTIAL.

nūdŭs, ă, ŭm, *naked, bare*; NUDE.

nullŭs, ă, ŭm (ne *not*, **ullus** *any one*), *no, none, not any one.*

nŭm, *whether*; in direct questions to be omitted in translation.

Nŭma, ae, m., *Numa Pompilius*, the second king of Rome.

nŭmĕrŭs, ī, m., NUMBER.

Nŭmĭtŏr, ōris, m., father of Rhea Silvia.

nunc, adv., *now.*

nuncio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**nuncius** *messenger*), AN-NOUNCE, *report.*

nuncŭpo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *to name.*

nunquăm and **numquăm**, adv. (ne *not*, **unquam** *ever*), *never.*

nūpĕr, adv. (**novus** *new*), *newly, recently.*

nutrio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm, *nourish.* NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nymphă, ae, f., *a nymph;* the nymphs were demi-goddesses inhabiting the sea, rivers, fountains, woods, trees, and mountains.

O.

ŏb, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for.*

ŏbēdio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (ob without any additional force, **audio** *listen to*), *listen to, obey; be subject to.* OBEDIENT.

ŏb-eo, īrĕ, īvī and **ĭī, ĭtŭm** (ob *towards,* **eo** *go*), *die.*

ŏb-erro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ob *about,* **erro** *wander*), *wander about, wander.*

ob-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (ob *before, at;* **jacio** *throw*), *throw before, at,* or *against; throw up.* OBJECT, OBJECTION.

oblīviscor, oblīvisci, oblītŭs sŭm, *forget.*

ob-ruo, ruĕrĕ, ruī, rŭtŭm (ob without additional force, **ruo** *cast down with violence*), *overwhelm; cover.*

ob-secro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ob *on account of,* **sacra** *sacrifices*), *beseech, implore.*

obsĕs, obsĭdis, m. (**obsideo** *stay*), *hostage.*

ob-testor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (ob with no additional force, **testor** *bear witness*), *conjure, beseech.*

ob-tĭneo, tĭnērĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (ob with no additional force, **teneo** *hold*), *hold,* OBTAIN, *possess.*

obviăm, adv., *in the way;* **obviam īrĕ** or **fiĕrī,** *to meet.*

occāsŭs, ūs, m. (**occīdo** *fall*), *going down;* **solis occāsu,** *at sunset.*

oc-cīdo, cīdĕrĕ, cīdī, cīsŭm (ob *against,* **caedo** *cut, strike*), *kill, slay.*

oc-culto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *hide, conceal.* OCCULT.

oc-cŭpo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ob with no additional force, **capio** *take*), *seize, take possession of,* OCCUPY. OCCUPATION.

oc-curro, currĕrĕ, cŭcurrī and **currī, cursŭm** (ob *towards,* **curro** *run*), *meet.* OCCUR, OCCURRENCE.

Oceănŭs, ī, m., OCEAN.

Ocĕlŭm, ī, n , a town in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul.

octāvŭs, ă, ŭm, *eighth.* OCTAVE.

octō-dĕcim, num. adj., *eighteen.*

octō-gintā, num. adj , *eighty.*

ŏcŭlŭs, ī, m., *eye.* OCULIST.

ōdī, ōdissĕ, *hate* [see **127**].

of-fendo, fendĕrĕ, fendī, fensŭm, OFFEND, *wound.* OFFENCE.

of-fĕro, of-fĕrrĕ, ob-tŭlī, oblātŭm (ob *towards,* **fero** *bring*), OFFER, *present.*

offĭcium, ī, n. (**opes** *aid,* **facio** *render*), *service, duty; obedience, allegiance.* OFFICE.

omnĭnō, adv. (**omnis** *all*), *altogether, at all.*

omnĭs, omnĕ, *all, every, the whole.* OMNI-SCIENCE, OMNI-POTENT, OMNI-PRESENT.

ŏnŭs, ŏnĕrĭs, n., *load, burden; weight; size.* ONEROUS.

ŏpĭs, ŏpĕm, ŏpĕ [nom., dat., and voc. sing. not used; pl. entire]; pl., **ŏpēs, ŏpŭm, ŏpĭbŭs**, etc.; f., *power; means, resources.*

ŏportĕt, ŏportĕrĕ, ŏportŭĭt, *it behooves, it is necessary, one ought* [see *128* and LN. LXIX., Examples 6 – 8].

oppĭdŭm, ī, n., *town, walled town.*

op-pugno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ob *against*, **pugno** *fight*), *attack, besiege, assault.*

optio, ōnĭs, f. (**opto** *choose*), *choice,* OPTION.

ŏpŭs, ŏpĕrĭs, n., *work, labor.*

ōrātio, ōrātiōnĭs, f. (**oro** *speak*), *speech, harangue;* ORATION.

ōrātōr, ōrātōrĭs, m. (**oro** *plead*), ORATOR.

ordĭno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**ordo** *arranging*), *arrange, order.*

Orgĕtŏrix, ĭgĭs, m., the noblest and richest among the Helvetii.

ŏriens, gen. **ŏrientĭs** (part. fr. orior), *rising.* ORIENT.

ŏrior, ŏrīrī, ortŭs sŭm, *rise, arise, begin.*

ornāmentŭm, ī, n. (**orno** *adorn*), ORNAMENT, *distinction.*

ōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**os** *mouth*), *beseech, beg; implore, pray.*

ōs, ōrĭs, n., *mouth; face.* ORAL.

ŏs, ossĭs, n., *bone.* OSSI-FY.

os-tendo, tendĕrĕ, tendī, tentŭm (**ob** *before*, **tendo** *spread*), *show, point out, exhibit.* OSTENSIBLE.

Ostiă, ae, f., a town at the mouth of the Tiber, built by Ancus Marcius.

ostiŭm, ī, n., *mouth* of a river.

ōvŭm, ī, n., *egg.* OVAL.

P.

P., abbreviation of *Publius*, a Roman praenomen.

pābŭlātio, ōnĭs, f., *foraging.*

pābŭlŭm, ī, n. (**pasco** *feed*), *food.*

pāco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**pax** *peace*), PACIFY; *subdue.*

paenĕ, adv., *almost, nearly.*

pāgŭs, ī, m., *district, canton.*

pār, gen. **părĭs**, *equal, like.* PAR.

părātŭs, ă, ŭm (part. of **paro** *prepare*), PRE-PARED, *ready.*

parco, parcĕrĕ, pĕpercī and **parsī, parcĭtŭm** and **parsŭm** (**parcus** *spare*), *to spare.*

părio, părĕrĕ, pĕpĕrī, părĭtŭm and **partŭm**, *bear, bring forth;* **ovum părĕre**, *to lay an egg.*

pars, partĭs, f., PART, *share; side; direction.*

parvŭs, ă, ŭm [comp., **minor**, superl., **minĭmus**], *small, little, insignificant.*

pascor, pascī, pastŭs sŭm, *feed, graze.*

passŭs, ūs, m. (pando *stretch out* the feet), *step,* PACE; as a measure of length, about five feet.

pastŏr, pastōrĭs, m. (pasco *feed*), *shepherd.* PASTOR.

pătĕ-făcio, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm (pateo *be open,* facio *make*), *make open, open.*

pătĕr, pătrĭs, m., FATHER.

păternŭs, ă, ŭm (pater *father*), PATERNAL.

pătior, pătī, passŭs sŭm, *let, allow; suffer.* PASSION, PASSIVE.

pătria, ae, f. (pater *father*), *native land, fatherland.* PATRIAL.

paucī, ae, ă, adj. pl., *few.*

paulŭs, ă, ŭm, *little;* **paulo,** n. abl. sing., *by a little, little.*

pāvo, ōnĭs, m. and f., *peacock.*

pax, pācĭs, f., PEACE. PACIFY.

pellĭs, pellĭs, f., *skin.*

pello, pellĕrĕ, pĕpŭlī, pulsŭm, *drive out* or *away, banish; rout.* RE-PULSE.

pennă, ae, f., *feather.* PEN.

pĕr, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by.*

per-cŭtio, cŭtĕrĕ, cussī, cussŭm (per *through,* quatio *strike*), *strike through, strike.* PERCUSSION.

per-do, dĕrĕ, dĭdī, dĭtŭm (per *through,* do *put*), *lose.* PERDITION.

per-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (per *through,* duco *lead*), *lead through* or *to, conduct;* **fossam perducĕre,** *to extend* or *make a trench.*

per-făcĭlĭs, ĕ (per *very,* facĭlis *easy*), *very easy.*

per-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (per *completely,* facio *make*), *accomplish.* PERFECTION.

perfĭdiă, ae, f. (perfĭdus *one who breaks his promise*), PERFIDY.

pĕrĭcŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm (pericŭlum *danger;* suffix **ōsus** *full of*), *dangerous.*

pĕrĭcŭlŭm, ĭ, n., *danger, risk,* PERIL.

pĕrĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *skilful, experienced.*

per-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (per *through,* mitto *let go*), PERMIT, *allow.* PERMISSION.

per-mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm (per *completely,* moveo *move*), *prevail upon.*

pernĭciēs, pernĭciēī, f. (pernĕco fr. per *completely,* neco *kill*), *ruin, destruction.* PERNICIOUS.

perpaucī, ae, ă (per *very,* pauci *few*), *very few.*

per-sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm (per *perseveringly,* sequor *follow*), *pursue.* PERSECUTE.

per-sĕvēro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (persevērus *very strict*), PERSEVERE, *continue.*

per-suādeo, suādērĕ, suāsī, suāsŭm (per *thoroughly,* suadeo *advise*), PERSUADE, *prevail upon.* PERSUASION.

per-terreo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm (per *thoroughly*, **terreo** *frighten*), *thoroughly frighten, terrify.*

per-tĭneo, tĭnērĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (per *thoroughly*, **teneo** *hold, lay hold of*), *extend; reach, tend;* PERTAIN, *belong.*

per-turbo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (per *thoroughly*, **turbo** *disturb*), *greatly disturb,* DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.

per-vĕnio, vĕnīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm (per *quite through*, **venio** *come*), *come through, come to; arrive; reach.*

pēs, pĕdĭs, m., *foot.* PEDAL.

pĕto, pĕtĕrĕ, pĕtīvī and **pĕtĭī, pĕtītŭm,** *ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack.* PETITION.

pĕtŭlantĭă, ae, f. (**petŭlans** *saucy*), *sauciness; insolence;* PETULANCE.

pīleŭs, ī, m., *hat; cap.*

pīlŭm, ī, n., *javelin.*

Pīso, ōnĭs, m., a Roman consul.

pistrīnŭm, ī, n. (**pistor** *miller*), *mill.*

plăceo, plăcērĕ, plăcuī, plăcĭtŭm, PLEASE; **plăcĕt,** impers., *it pleases, it seems good.*

plăgă, ae, f., *hunting-net, toil.*

plebs, plēbĭs, f., *commons, common people.*

plūrĭmŭs, ă, ŭm [superl. of **multus**], *most.*

plūs, plūrĭs [compar. of **multus**, see *85*], *more.*

poenă, ae, f., *punishment.* PENAL.

pollĭceor, pollĭcērī, pollĭcĭtŭs sŭm (insep. prefix **pot** *largely*, **liceor** *offer*), *promise.*

pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm, *place, put;* **castra pōnĕrĕ,** *to pitch a camp.* POSITION.

pŏpŭlātio, ōnĭs, f. (**populor** *ravage*), *ravaging.*

pŏpŭlor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (**populus** *people*), *ravage, lay waste.* DE-POPULATE.

pŏpŭlŭs, ī, m., PEOPLE; pl., *nations, tribes.*

portă, ae, f., *gate.* PORTAL.

por-tendo, tendĕrĕ, tendī, tentŭm, *fortell, predict, presage; betoken;* PORTEND.

porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *carry, bear,* TRANS-PORT. EX-PORT.

portōrĭŭm, ī, n. (**porto** *carry*), *duty* paid on goods imported or exported.

posco, poscĕrĕ, pŏposcī, no sup., *demand.*

possessio, ōnĭs, f. (**possĭdeo** *possess*), POSSESSION.

pos-sĭdeo, sĭdērĕ, sēdī, sessŭm (**potis** *powerful*, **sedeo** *sit*), *be master of;* POSSESS.

pos-sŭm, pos-sĕ, pot-uī (**potis** *able*, **sum** *be*), *be able, can* [see *68*].

post, prep. w. acc., *after.*

posteā, adv. (**post** *after*, **ea** *that*), *after that, afterwards.*

post-eā-quām, *after that, after.*

postĕrŭs, ă, ŭm [comp., **posterior**; superl., **postrēmus** and **postŭmus**], *following, ensuing,*

succeeding; **postero die**, *on the following day;* **postĕrī, ōrŭm**, m. pl., *descendants.*

post-quăm, conj., *after, as soon as.*

postrīdiĕ, adv. (**postero** *following*, **die** *on the day*), *on the following day.*

postŭlo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *ask for, demand.*

pŏtens, gen. **pŏtentĭs** (**possum** *be able*), *able, powerful, influential.* POTENT.

pŏtestās, ātĭs, f. (**potens** *able*), *ability, power; opportunity;* **ălĭcuī pŏtestātĕm făcĕrĕ**, *to give any one an opportunity.*

pŏtior, pŏtīrī, pŏtītŭs sŭm (**potis** *able*), *acquire, obtain, get possession of.*

pŏtiŭs, adv., *rather, sooner.*

prae-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (**prae** *before*, **cedo** *go*), *surpass, excel;* PRECEDE. PRECEDENCE, PRECEDENT.

praecĭpĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**praeceps** *headlong*), *throw violently, throw.* PRECIPITATE.

praecĭpuē, adv. (**praecipuus** fr. **praecipio** fr. **prae** *before*, **capio** *take*), *especially, chiefly.*

prae-dĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**prae** *publicly*, **dico** *tell*), *proclaim, declare; boast.* PREDICATE.

prae-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm (**prae** *before*, **fero** *bear*), PREFER.

prae-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (**prae** *over*, **facio** *place*), *place over, put in command of.*

prae-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (**prae** *forward*, **mitto** *send*), *send forward.*

praemiŭm, ī, n. (**prae** *beyond* others, **emo** *take*), *profit, reward.* PREMIUM.

prae-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm (**prae** *before, first;* **pono** *put*), *put before* or *first; prefer.* PREPOSITION.

praesēpĕ, ĭs, n. (**praesepio**, *to fence in front*), *manger.*

praesĭdiŭm, ī, n. (**praesideo** fr. **prae** *before*, **sedeo** *sit*), *defence, protection; guard, garrison.*

prae-sto, stārĕ, stĭtī, stĭtŭm and **stātŭm** (**prae** *before*, **sto** *stand*), *stand before, excel;* **se praestāre**, *to show one's self.*

prae-sŭm, essĕ, fuī (**prae** *over*, **sum** *be*), *be over, rule over, be in command of.*

praetĕr, prep. w. acc. (**prae** *before* and suffix **ter**), *past, by; besides, except.*

praeter-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (**praeter** *by*, **eo** *go*), *go by.* PRETERIT.

praeter-quăm, adv., *except.*

praetŏr, praetōrĭs, m., *praetor*, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually.

prātŭm, ī, n., *meadow.*

prĕcī, prĕcĕm, prĕcĕ [nom. and gen. sing. not used], pl., **prĕcēs, prĕcŭm**, etc., *request, prayer.*

prĕmo, prĕmĕrĕ, pressī, pres-

sŭm, PRESS, *press upon*. OPPRESSION.

prĕtiŭm, ī, n., *worth, value, price*. APPRECIATE.

prīdiē, adv., *on the day before*.

prīmo, adv. (primus), *at first*.

prīmŭm, adv. (primus), *at first*; **quăm prīmŭm**, *as soon as possible*

prīmŭs, ă, ŭm [see *85*], *first*; **prīmŭm (agmĕn)**, *the van* of an army. PRIME, PRIMAL, PRIMARY.

princeps, gen. **princĭpĭs**, adj. (primus *first*, capio *take*), *first, chief*; **princeps, ĭpĭs**, m., *chief, leader*. PRINCE, PRINCIPAL.

princĭpātŭs, ūs, m. (princeps *chief*), *first place; pre-eminence*; **principātum tenēre**, *to be at the head*.

priŏr, prius [superl. **prīmŭs**, see *85*], *the former; first*.

Priscus, ī, m., a surname of the elder Tarquin.

pristĭnŭs, ă, ŭm, *former*; PRISTINE.

priusquăm, adv., *before*.

prīvātim, adv. (privus *single*), *as a private citizen*.

prīvātŭs, ă, ŭm (part. of privo *deprive*), PRIVATE.

prŏ, prep. w. abl., *before, for, instead of*.

prŏbo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (probus *good*), *show*; PROVE. PROBATION.

Prŏcās, ae, m. See **Silvius**.

prō-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (pro *forward*, cedo *go*), *go forth*, PROCEED, *advance*. PROCESSION.

prŏcŭl, adv. (procello *drive forward*), *afar off, far*.

prō-cūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (pro *for*, curo *care*), *care for, take care of, manage*. PROCURE.

prōdĭgiŭm, ī, n. (pro *beforehand*, root dic *point out*), PRODIGY.

proelĭum, ī, n., *battle*.

prŏfectio, ōnis, f. (proficiscor *set out*), *departure*.

prŏ-fĭciscor, fĭciscī, fectŭs sŭm (pro *forwards*, facio *put one's self*), *set out, depart; go, march, travel*.

prŏ-fŭgio, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm (pro *before*, fugio *flee*), *flee before, flee*.

prŏ-hĭbeo, hĭbērĕ, hĭbuī, hĭbĭtŭm (pro *in front*, habeo *hold*), *restrain, prevent, keep from*; PROHIBIT. PROHIBITION.

prō-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (pro *forward*, jacio *throw*), *throw forward, cast away*; **se prōjĭcĕrĕ**, *to throw one's self forward* or *down*. PROJECT.

prō-mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm (pro *forward*, moveo *move*), *move forward, advance*. PROMOTION.

prŏpĕ, prŏpiŭs, proxĭmē, adv., *near, almost*.

prŏpĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (propĕrus *speedy*), *hasten*.

prŏpinquŭs, ī, m. (prope *not far*, hinc *hence*), *relative*; **prŏpin-**

quă, ae, f., *kinswoman.* PROPINQUITY.

prŏpĭŏr, prŏpĭŭs [superl. **proxĭmus,** see *85*], *nearer.*

prō-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtŭm (pro *before,* pono *place*), *expose to view;* PROPOSE. PROPOSAL, PROPOSITION.

proptĕr, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

proptĕr-eă, adv., *for this reason.*

protĕreă quŏd, *because.*

prō-spĭcio, spĭcĕrĕ, spexī, spectŭm (pro *forwards,* specio *look*), *look forwards; look out for.* PROSPECT, PROSPECTIVE.

prō-sŭm, prōd-essĕ, prō-fuī (pro(d) *for,* **sum** *be*), *be for, be useful; benefit, profit.*

prōvinciă, ae, f., *province.*

proxĭmē, adv. [positive **prŏpĕ,** compar. **prŏpĭŭs**], *very near, very recently, last.*

proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm [see *85*], *next, nearest; ensuing, last.* PROXIMITY, APPROXIMATE.

publĭcē, adv. (publicus fr. **pŏpŭlus** *people*), *in the name of the state.*

Publĭŭs, ī, m., a Roman name.

pŭdŏr, pŭdōrĭs, m. (pudeo *feel shame*), *shame, feeling of shame.*

puellă, ae, f., *girl.*

puĕr, puĕrī, m., *boy.* PUER-ILE.

puĕrĭtia, ae, f. (puer *boy*), *boyhood, childhood.*

pugnă, ae, f., *battle.* PUGNACIOUS.

pugno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *fight.*

pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm (polio *polish*), *beautiful.*

pūnio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (poena *punishment*), PUNISH.

pūpillus, ī, m. (pupŭlus *a little boy*), PUPIL, *ward.*

pŭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *think, believe.*

Pȳrēnaeŭs, ă, ŭm, *Pyrenean;* **Pȳrēnaeī montes,** *the Pyrenees.*

Q.

quā, adv. (qui) *where.*

quădrāgēsĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (quadraginta *forty*), *fortieth.*

quădrāgintă, num. adj. indecl. (quattuor *four*), *forty.*

quaero, quaerĕrĕ, quaesīvī and **quaesiī, quaesītŭm,** *see, ask,* IN-QUIRE. IN-QUEST, IN-QUISITION.

quālĭs, quālĕ, *of what sort; as.*

quăm, conj. and adv., *than; as.*

quăm-ob-rĕm, adv., *on account of which thing; for which reason; wherefore.*

quam-quăm, conj., *although.*

quamvīs, conj. (quam *as,* vis *you will*), *as you will; however much; although.*

quantŭs, ă, ŭm, *how much; how great; as;* **quantum boni,** *how much good.*

quārĕ, adv. (abl. of quae and res), *for which thing, for which.*

quartŭs, ă, ŭm (quattuor *four*), *fourth.* QUART.

quattuŏr, num. adj. indecl., *four.*

quĕ, conj., *and* [see LN. XXIII., VY., 1].

quĕror, quĕrī, questŭs sŭm, *complain.* QUERULOUS.

quī, quae, quŏd, rel. pron., *who, which, what; that* [see ***114***].

quī, quae, quŏd [interrog. pronoun used adjectively, see ***116***], *which? what? what sort of a? what kind of a?*

quĭd, *why?* [see LN. XCII., NOTE 1].

quīdăm, quaedăm, quoddăm or **quiddăm**; gen. **cujusdăm**; [indef. pron. declined like **qui**], *a certain.*

quĭdĕm, adv., *indeed;* **ne — quĭdem,** *not — even.*

quīn, conj. (**qui** *by which,* **ne** *not*), *but that, that not.*

quindĕcĭm, num. adj. indecl. (**quinque** *five,* **decem** *ten*), *fifteen.*

quingentī, ae, ă (**quinque** *five,* **centum** *hundred*), *five hundred.*

quīnī, ae, ă (**quinque** *five*), *five each.*

quĭs, quae, quĭd, interrog. pron., *who? what?* [see ***116***].

quĭs, indef. pronoun, *anybody, anything* [see ***116***].

quisquăm, quaequăm, quidquăm or **quicquăm**; gen. **cujusquăm**; [indef. pron. declined like **quis**], *any one, anything, any.*

quŏ, adv., *that, in order that.*

quŏd, conj., *because, that.*

quŏmŏdŏ, adv. (**qui** *what,* **modus** *manner*), *in what manner, by what means, how.*

quŏquĕ, conj, *also.*

quŏtīdiĕ, adv. (**quot** *every,* **dies** *day*), *every day, daily.*

quŭm and **cŭm,** rel. adv., *when, as;* conj., *since; although;* **quŭm — tŭm,** *both — and.*

R.

rādix, rādīcĭs, f., *root;* **radix or radīces montis,** *the foot of a mountain.* RADISH.

răpīnă, ae, f. (**rapio** *seize*), *plundering;* RAPINE.

răpio, răpŭī, răpŭī, raptŭm, *seize, plunder.* RAPTURE.

raptŏr, ōrĭs, m. (**rapio** *seize*), *one who seizes; robber.*

Raurăcī, ōrŭm, m., a people in Northeastern Gaul, neighbors of the Helvetii.

rĕcens, gen. **rĕcentĭs,** RECENT, *fresh, new.*

rĕ-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (**re** *back,* **capio** *take*), *take back;* RECEIVE; **se recipĕre,** *to betake one's self, withdraw.* RECEPTION.

red-do, dĕrĕ, dĭdī, dĭtŭm (**re(d)** *back again,* **do** *give*), *return.* RENDER, RENDITION.

rĕd-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (**re(d)** *back,* **eo** *go*), *go back, return.*

rĕd-ĭmo, ĭmĕrĕ, ēmī, emptŭm (**re(d)** *back,* **emo** *buy*), *buy back, release, ransom; purchase; hire,*

farm. REDEEM, REDEMPTION.

rĕdĭtio, ōnis, f. (redeo *go back*), *going back, return.*

rĕ-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (re *back*, duco *lead*), *lead back, lead.* REDUCE, REDUCTION.

rĕ-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm (re *back*, fero *bear*), *bear* or *bring back, restore.* REFER, RELATE.

re-fluo, fluĕrĕ, no perf. nor sup. (re *back*, fluo *flow*), *flow back.* REFLUENT, REFLUX.

rĕgio, ōnis, f., REGION.

rēgĭŭs, ă, ŭm (rex *king*), *royal.*

regno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (regnum *rule*), *reign, rule.*

regnŭm, ī, (rego *to rule*), *royal power, sovereignty; government; kingdom.*

rĕ-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (re *back*, jacio *throw*). *throw back, hurl back.* REJECT, REJECTION.

rĕlĭgio, ōnis, f., RELIGION, *sanctity.*

rĕ-linquo, linquĕrĕ, lĭquī, lictŭm (re *behind*, linquo *leave*), *leave behind, leave; quit, abandon.* RELINQUISH.

rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm (relinquo *let remain*), *remaining, rest of.*

rĕ-mănco, mănērĕ, mansī, mansŭm (re *behind*, maneo *stay*), *stay behind,* REMAIN.

rĕmĭniscor, rĕmĭniscī, *recall to mind, recollect.* REMINISCENCE.

rĕ-mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm (re *back*, moveo *move*), REMOVE. REMOTE.

Rĕmŭs, ī, m., twin brother of Romulus.

rĕ-nuncio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (re *back*, nuncio *bring word*), *report.* RENOUNCE.

rĕpentĕ, adv. (repens *sudden*), *suddenly.*

rĕ-pĕrio, pĕrīrĕ, pĕrī, pertŭm (re *again*, pario *produce*), *find, discover.*

rĕ-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm (re *again*, pono *place*), *place again, restore.* REPOSE.

rēs, rĕī, f., *thing, affair.*

re-scindo, scindĕrĕ, scĭdī, scissŭm (re *away*, scindo *cut*), *cut away, destroy.* RESCIND.

re-spondeo, spondērĕ, spondī, sponsŭm (re *in return*, spondeo *promise*), *reply, answer.* RESPOND.

responsŭm, ī, n. (respondeo *reply*), *answer.* RESPONSE.

respublĭcă, reīpublĭcae, f. (res *affair*, publica *belonging to the people*), REPUBLIC, *commonwealth* [see ***110***].

re-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭtūtŭm (re *again*, statuo *set up*). *restore.* RESTITUTION.

rĕ-tĭneo, tĭnērĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (re *back*, teneo *hold*), *hold back, restrain, prevent.* RETENTION.

rĕvĕrentĭă, ae, f. (revereor *stand in awe of*), REVERENCE.

rĕ-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm and

rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm (re *back*, verto *turn*), *turn back, return.* REVERT, REVERSION.

rĕ-vŏco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (re *back*, voco *call*), *call back.* REVOKE.

rex, rēgĭs, m., *king.* REGAL.

Rhea, ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnŭs, ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhŏdănŭs, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

rīpă, ae, f., *bank* (of a stream).

rixor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (rixa *quarrel*), *to quarrel.*

rŏgo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *ask, demand, request.*

Rōmă, ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm, *Roman;* **Rōmānŭs, ī**, m., *a Roman.*

Rōmŭlŭs, ī, m., the founder and first king of Rome; **Romŭlus Silvius**, a king of Alba.

rūpes, rūpĭs, f. (rumpo *break*), *rock, cliff.*

S.

Săbīnī, ōrŭm, m., *the Sabines*, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.

săcĕr, sacră, sacrŭm, SACRED; **sacră, ōrŭm**, n. pl., *sacred rites, sacrifices.*

săcerdōs, ōtĭs, m. and f. (sacer *sacred*, do *give*), *priest; priestess.*

saepĕ, saepiŭs, saepissĭme, adv., *often.*

saepĕ-nŭmĕro, adv., *oftentimes, frequently.*

sălūto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (salus *greeting*), *greet*, SALUTE. SALUTATION.

sanguĭs, sanguĭnĭs, m., *blood.* SANGUINE, SANGUINARY.

Santŏnēs, ŭm and **Santŏnī, ōrŭm**, m. pl., a people of Aquitania.

săpientiă, ae, f. (sapiens *wise*), *wisdom.*

sarcīnă, ae, f. (sarcio *to patch*), *bundle;* pl., *baggage* carried by soldiers. See **impedimenta.**

sătĭs, adv., *enough, sufficiently;* used adjectively in the sense of *sufficient.*

sătis-făcio, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm (satis *enough*, facio *do*), *do enough*, SATISFY, *give* SATISFACTION.

Sāturniă, ae, f., a town built by Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.

Sāturnŭs, ī, m. (sero *sow*), *Saturn*, the father of Jupiter; honored as the god of agriculture.

scĕlŭs, scĕlĕrĭs, n., *crime, guilt, wickedness.*

scio, scīrĕ, scīvī and **scĭī, scītŭm**, *know, understand.* SCIENCE.

scrībo, scrībĕrĕ, scripsī, scriptŭm, *write.* SCRIBE, DESCRIBE, SCRIPT, SCRIPTURE.

scūtŭm, ī, n., *a shield;* [**scutum** was an oblong *shield*, made of wood, and covered with leather; **clipeus**, a round brazen *shield.*]

sĕd, conj., *but.*

sēdēs, sēdĭs, f. (sedeo *sit*), *seat;*

dwelling-place; **sedes regni,** *seat of government.*

Sĕgŭsiānī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, neighbors of the Allobroges and Aedui.

sĕmĕl, adv., *once.*

sempĕr, adv., *always, continually.*

sĕnātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (**senex** *old*), SENATOR.

sĕnātŭs, ūs, m. (**senex** *old*), SENATE.

sēnī, ae, ă (**sex** *six*), *six each.*

sententiă, ae, f. (**sentio** *think*), *opinion.* SENTENCE.

septĕm, num. adj. indecl., *seven.*

septentriōnēs (septemtriōnēs), ŭm, m. pl., *the north;* **sub septentrionĭbus,** *towards the north.*

septĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (**septem** *seven*), *seventh.*

Sĕquănă, ae, m., a river of Gaul, *the* modern *Seine.*

Sēquănī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, dwelling on the Sequana.

Sēquănŭs, ă, ŭm, *of the Sequani.*

sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm, *follow; accompany.* SEQUENCE.

sermo, sermōnĭs, m., *discourse, conversation.* SERMON.

servĭtus, ūtĭs, f. (**servus** *slave*), *slavery, bondage.*

Servĭŭs, ī, m., *Servius Tullius,* the sixth king of Rome.

servŭs, ī, m., *slave,* SERVANT.

sex, num. adj. indecl., SIX.

sī, conj., *if; whether; see whether.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus.*

siccŭs, ă, ŭm, *dry;* **siccŭm, ī,** n., *dry land.*

sīc-ŭt and **sīc-ŭtī,** adv., *as; as if.*

signĭfĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**signum** *sign,* **facio** *make*), *mean,* SIGNIFY. SIGNIFICANT.

signŭm, ī, n., SIGN, *mark;* SIGNAL.

silvă, ae, f., *woods, forest.* SILVAN.

Silvĭă, ae, f., *Rhea Silvia,* the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Silvĭŭs, ī, m., name of several kings of Alba; **Silvius Procas,** a king of Alba and father of Numitor and Amulius.

sĭmĭlĭs, sĭmĭlĕ, *like,* SIMILAR

sĭn, conj. (**si** *if,* **ne** *not*), *but if.*

sĭnĕ, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singŭlī, ae, ă, SINGLE, *one by one; each.*

sĭnistĕr, sĭnistră, sinistrŭm, *left.* SINISTER.

sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, m., *father-in-law.*

sŏcĭŭs, ī, m., *ally.* AS-SOCI-ATE.

sōl, sōlĭs, m., *sun.* SOLAR.

sŏleo, sŏlērĕ, sŏlĭtŭs sŭm, *be wont, be accustomed.*

sōlĭtūdo, ĭnĭs, f. (**solus** *alone*), *desert; solitary place;* SOLITUDE.

sōlŭm, adv. (**solus** *alone*), *only, alone.*

sŏlŭm, ī, n., *ground,* SOIL.

sōlŭs, ă, ŭm, *alone, only* [see *24*].

sŏnĭtŭs, ūs, m (**sono** *make a noise*), *sound, noise.*

sŏnŭs, ī, m. (**sono** *make a noise*), *noise.*

sŏrŏr, sŏrōrĭs, f., *sister.*

spătĭum, ī, n., SPACE; *opportunity.*

specto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**specio** *look*), *look at, behold, see; face, front, be situated.*

spēs, spĕī, f. *hope, expectation.*

spīrĭtŭs, ūs, m. (**spiro** *breathe*), *breath; pride; lofty airs.*

spontĕ, f. abl. [gen. **spontĭs**; no other cases found], *of free will;* **suā sponte,** *of his own free will.* SPONTANEOUS.

stătuo, stătuĕrĕ, stătuī, stătūtŭm (**status** *standing*), *set up; put; establish; decide.* STATUTE.

stĕrĭlĭs, ĕ, *unfruitful,* STERILE.

stīpendĭum, ī, n. (**stips** *contribution,* **pendo** *pay*), *tax, tribute.* STIPEND.

sto, stārĕ, stĕtī, stătūm, *stand;* **nobis sanguĭne stat,** *it costs us blood.* STATE, STATION.

stŏlĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, *foolish.* STOLID.

strēnuŭs, ă, ŭm, *bold, brave.* STRENUOUS.

stŭdeo, stŭdērĕ, stŭduī, no sup., *be eager* or *zealous, desire.*

stŭdium, ī, n. (**studeo** *be eager*), *zeal, desire.* STUDY.

suādeo, suādērĕ, suāsī, suāsŭm, *advise,* PER-SUADE.

sŭb, prep. w. abl., *under, beneath; in the time of;* **sub monte,** *at the foot of a mountain.*

sub-dūco dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (**sub** *from under,* **duco** *draw*), *draw from under; withdraw; take away.*

sub-eo, īrĕ, īvī and **iī, ĭtŭm** (**sub** *under,* **eo** *go*), *go under; endure.*

sŭbĭto, adv. (**subĭtus** *sudden*), *suddenly, quickly.*

sub-lĕvo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**sub** *from beneath,* **levo** *lift up*), *raise up, support; help, aid.*

sub-rīdeo, rīdērĕ, rīsī, rīsŭm (**sub** *a little,* **rideo** *laugh*), *smile.*

sub-sĭlio, sĭlīrĕ, sĭluī and **sĭlĭī,** no sup. (**sub** *up,* **salio** *leap*), *leap up, jump.*

sub-vĕho, vĕhĕrĕ, vexī, vectŭm (**sub** *from below,* **veho** *carry*), *bring up, transport.*

suc-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (**sub** *behind,* **cedo** *come*). SUCCEED, *follow.* SUCCESSION.

Suēvī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a powerful people of Germany.

suī, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves* [see **112**]. SUICIDE. See **caedo.**

Sullă, ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla,* a celebrated Roman.

sŭm, essĕ, fuī, *be* [see **62**].

summă, ae, f. (**summus** *highest*), *amount, sum total.* SUM.

summŭs, ă, ŭm, *highest* [positive **supĕrus,** comparative **superior,** superlative **suprēmus** and **summus**].

sūmo, sūmĕrĕ, sumpsī, sumptŭm, *take,* AS-SUME. AS-SUMPTION.

sŭpĕr, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon.* SUPER-.

sŭperbio, īrĕ, no perf. nor sup. (**superbus** *proud*), *be proud of.*

sŭperbŭs, ă, ŭm, *proud;* **Superbŭs, ī**, m., *the Proud*, a surname of the younger Tarquin, the last king of Rome.

sŭpĕriŏr, sŭpĕriŭs, *upper, higher: former.* SUPERIOR. See **supĕrus.**

sŭpĕrŭs, ă, ŭm [comp. **superior**, superl. **suprēmus** or **summus**] (**super** *over, above*), *above, on high, upper.*

sŭpĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**super** *over*), *surmount, surpass, overcome, subdue.*

sŭper-sŭm, essĕ, fuī (**super** *over, beyond;* **sum** *be*), *be over; survive.*

supplĭcĭum, ī, n., *punishment.*

sus-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (**sub** *under*, **capio** *take*), *undertake, take upon; engage in; receive;* **sibi suscipĕre**, *to take upon one's self*

suspĭcio, ōnĭs, f. (**suspĭcor** *suspect*), SUSPICION.

suspĭcor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (**suspicio** fr. **sub** *secretly*, **specio** *look at*), SUSPECT.

sus-tĭneo, tĭnērĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (**sub** *up*, **teneo** *hold*), *hold up*, SUSTAIN; *endure; withstand.*

suŭs, ă, ŭm (**sui**), *his, his own; her, her own; its, its own; their, their own.*

T.

T., abbreviation of *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.

tăbŭlă, ae, f., *board; writing-table; muster-roll.* TABLE.

tălentŭm, ī, n., *a* TALENT, a sum of money equal to about $1200.

tăm, adv., *so, so very.*

tămĕn, adv., *nevertheless; yet, still.*

tamquăm and **tanquăm**, adv. (**tam** *so*, **quam** *as*), *as much as; as if.*

Tănăquīl, īlĭs, f., wife of Tarquinius Priscus.

tandĕm, adv., *at length; at last.*

tantŭs, ă, ŭm, *so great, such, so large.*

tardĭtās, ātĭs, f. (**tardus** *slow*), *slowness*, TARDINESS; *heaviness.*

Tarpēiă, ae, f., *Tarpeia* [pronounced *Tar-pē-ya*], daughter of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpēiŭs, ă, ŭm, *Tarpeian* [pronounced *Tar-pē-yan*]; **mons Tarpēius**, *the Tarpeian Rock*, the name of a rock on the Capitoline hill from which criminals were thrown headlong; *the Tarpeian Mount.*

Tarquĭniī, ōrŭm, m. pl., an ancient town of Etruria.

Tarquĭniŭs, ī, m., *Tarquin*, the name of an illustrious Roman family, of which two, Priscus and Superbus, were kings.

tectŭm, ī, n. (tego *to cover*), *roof.*

tēlŭm, ī, n., *weapon, missile.*

tempĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (tempus *a piece cut off*), *abstain.* TEMPER, TEMPERATE.

tempestās, ātĭs, f. (tempus *time*), *storm;* TEMPEST.

templŭm, ī, n., TEMPLE.

tempŭs, tempŏrĭs, n., *time.* TEMPORAL.

tĕneo, tĕnērĕ, tĕnuī, tentŭm, *hold; have, possess; keep; restrain;* **mĕmŏriā tĕnērĕ,** *to remember.*

tĕnĕr, tĕnĕrā, tĕnĕrŭm, TENDER, *delicate.*

tento, ārĕ āvī, ātŭm, *try.* TENTATIVE.

terrā, ae, f., *earth, land, ground.* TERRACE.

terreo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, *frighten,* TERRIFY.

terrĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (terreo *frighten*), *terrify.*

terrĭtōrĭŭm, ī, n. (terra *earth*), TERRITORY.

tertio, adv. (tertius *third*), *the third time.*

testĭs, testĭs, m. and f., *witness.* TESTIFY.

Ti., abbreviation of *Tiberius*, a Roman praenomen.

Tĭbĕrĭs, ĭs [acc. ĭm, abl. ī], m., *the Tiber*, a river in Italy on which Rome is situated.

Tĭbĕrĭŭs, ī, m. See **Ti.**

tĭmeo, ērĕ, uī, no supine, *to fear.*

tĭmĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, (timeo *to fear*), TIMID; *cowardly.*

tĭmŏr, tĭmōrĭs, m., *fear.* TIMOROUS.

tintinnābŭlŭm, ī, n. (tintinno *to ring*), *bell.*

Tĭtŭs, ī, m. See **T.**

tollo, tollĕrĕ, sustŭlī, sublātŭm, *lift, raise; pick up; remove, take away; destroy.*

tŏnitrŭs, ūs, m., and **tŏnitrŭ,** n. indecl. (tono *to thunder*), *thunder.*

tŏno, tŏnārĕ, tŏnuī, tŏnĭtŭm, *thunder.*

tōtŭs, ă, ŭm, *whole, entire.*

trā-dūco and **trans-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm** (trans *across*, duco *lead*), *lead across; lead; lead from one place to another.* TRADUCE.

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over; beyond.* TRANS-.

trans-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (trans *across, over;* eo *go*), *go across* or *over; cross.* TRANSIT, TRANSITIVE, TRANSIENT, TRANSITION.

trans-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm (trans *across*, fero *bear*), *bear across;* TRANSFER. TRANSLATION.

trans-ĭgo, ĭgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm (trans *through to the end*, ago *bring*), *bring to an end; spend.* TRANSACT, TRANSACTION.

tran-sĭlio or **trans-sĭlio, sĭlīrĕ, sĭlīvī, sĭlĭī,** or **sĭluī, sultŭm** (trans *over*, salio *leap*), *leap over.*

trans-porto, ārē, āvī, ātŭm (**trans** *across*, **porto** *carry*), *carry across*, TRANSPORT. TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, triă [see *108*], *three*.

Trēvĭrī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Northern Gaul.

trĭbūnŭs, ī, m. (**tribus** *tribe*), TRIBUNE; **trĭbūnī mīlĭtŭm**, *military tribunes*, of which officers each legion had six.

trĭbuo, trĭbuĕrĕ, trĭbuī, trĭbūtŭm, *give, grant, bestow*. TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTION.

trīcēsĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (**triginta** *thirty*), *thirtieth*.

trīduŭm, ī, n. (**tres** *three*, **dies** *day*), *three days*.

trĭgĕmĭnī, ōrŭm, m. pl. (**tres** *three* **gignor** *be born*), *three brothers* born at a birth.

trīgintā, num. adj. indecl., *thirty*.

tristĭs, tristĕ, *sad, sorrowful*.

triumpho, ārē, āvī, ātŭm (**triumphus** *a triumph*), *to triumph*.

Trōjă, ae, f., *Troy*, a city in the northwestern part of Asia Minor.

Trōjānŭs, ă, ŭm, *Trojan*.

tū, pers. pron., *thou, you* [see *112*].

tŭbă, ae, f. (akin to **tubus**, *a tube*), *trumpet*.

tŭbĭcĕn, ĭnĭs, m. (**tuba** *trumpet*, **cano** *to sound*), *trumpeter*.

Tulingī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany, neighbors of the Helvetii.

Tullĭŭs, ī, m. See **Servius**.

Tullĭă, ae, f., daughter of Servius Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius Superbus.

Tullŭs, ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.

tŭm, adv., *then; also*.

tŭmŭltŭs, ī, m. (**tumeo** *swell*), *mound*.

turrĭs, turrĭs, f., *tower*. TURRET.

tūtŏr, ōrĭs, m. (**tueor** *protect*), *guardian*; TUTOR.

tūtŭs, ă, ŭm (**tueor** *protect*), *safe*.

tuŭs, ă, ŭm, poss. pron. (**tu** *thou, you*), *thy, thine; your, yours*.

tўrannŭs, ī, m., *monarch; tyrant*.

U.

ūbĕr, ūbĕrĭs, n., *udder; teat*.

ŭbĭ, adv., *when, where*.

ulciscor, ulcīscī, ultŭs sŭm, *take revenge; avenge*.

ullŭs, ă, ŭm, *any* [see *24*].

ultĕrĭŏr, ultĕrĭŭs (**ulter** *that is beyond*), *farther* [see *85*]. ULTERIOR.

ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond*. ULTRA-.

ūnā, adv. (**unus** *one and the same*), *at the same time; in company, together*.

undĕ, adv., *from which place, whence*.

undĭque, adv. (**unde, que**), *from all parts; on all sides*.

ūnŭs, ă, ŭm, *one, single; one and the same*; pl., *alone* [see *24*].

urbs, urbĭs, f., *city.* SUB-URBS.

ūsŭs, ūs, m. (**utor** *use*), USE; *advantage.*

usquĕ, adv., *even; till.*

ŭt and **ūtī**, conj., *that, in order that; as.*

ŭtĕr, utrā, utrŭm, *which of two, which* [see **24**].

ŭterquĕ, ūtrăquĕ, ūtrumquĕ; gen. **utrĭusquĕ**, etc. [declined like **ūtĕr**, see **24**], *each, both.*

ūtĭlis, ūtĭlĕ (**utor** *use*, suffix **ilis** denoting *capability*), *useful, beneficial, profitable.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsŭs sŭm, USE, *make use of; adopt.*

utrŭm, adv. (**uter** *which of two*), *whether.*

uvă, ae, f., *a grape; a bunch of grapes.*

uxŏr, uxōrĭs, f., *wife.*

V.

văco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *be unoccupied.* VACATE, VACANT, VACATION.

vădŭm, ī, n. (**vado** *go*), *ford, shallow.*

vāgītŭs, ūs, m. (**vagio** *cry, squall*), *crying, squalling.*

văgor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (**vagus** *roaming about*), *roam about, wander about.* VAGA-BOND.

văleo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, PRE-VAIL.

vallŭm, ī, n. (**vallus** the line of *palisades, stakes*, set about an intrenchment), *rampart, intrenchment.*

vasto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (**vastus** *empty, desolate*), *lay waste*, DE-VASTATE.

vectīgăl, vectīgālĭs, n. (**veho** *carry*), *toll* paid for carrying goods into a country; *tax; revenue.*

vĕhĕmentĕr, vĕhĕmentiŭs, vĕhĕmentissĭmē, adv. (**vehĕmens** *violent*), *violently, severely; furiously;* VEHEMENTLY.

vĕl, conj., *or;* **vĕl — vĕl**, *either — or.*

vendo, vendĕrĕ, vendĭdī, vendĭtŭm (**venum** *sale*, do *give*), *sell.* VEND.

vĕnio, vĕnīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm, *come; arrive at.*

verbĕr, ĕrĭs, n., *blow.* RE-VERBER-ATE.

verbŭm, ī, n., *word.* VERB, VERBAL.

vĕreor, vĕrērī, vĕrĭtŭs sŭm, *fear.*

vērō, adv. (**verus** *true*), *in truth, truly; indeed; but.*

vescor, vescī, *fill one's self with; live upon; eat.*

Vĕsontio, ōnĭs, f., the chief town of the Sequăni.

vespĕr, vespĕrĭs and **vespĕr, ī**, m., *evening star; evening;* **ad vespĕrŭm**, *till evening.* VESPER, VESPERS.

Vestă, ae, f., *Vesta*, the goddess of the hearth, to whom a perpetual fire was kept burning.

Vestālĭs, ĕ, *of* or *belonging to Vesta, Vestal.*

vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm, poss. pron., *your, yours.*

vĕtŭs, gen. **vĕtĕrĭs,** *old, long standing, ancient.* VETERAN, IN-VETER-ATE.

vexillŭm, ī, n. (**velum** *sail*), *standard; flag.*

vexo, ārē, āvī, ātŭm (**veho** *carry*), *trouble, annoy, harass.* VEX, VEXATION, VEXATIOUS.

viă, æ, f., *way, road; path; march.*

vīcēsĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (**viginti** *twenty*), *twentieth.*

victōriă, æ, f. (**victor** *conqueror*), VICTORY.

vīcŭs, ī, m., *village.*

vĭdeo, vīdērē, vīdī, vīsŭm, *see.*

vĭdeor, vĭdērī, vīsŭs sŭm, pass. and deponent, *be seen; seem; seem good* or *proper.*

vĭgĭliă, æ, f. (**vigĭlo** *to watch*), *watch;* **de tertia vigilia,** *in the third watch.* See LN. LV., NOTE 5.

vīgintī, num. adj. indecl., *twenty.*

vinco, vincĕrē, vīcī, victŭm, *conquer.*

vincŭlŭm, ī, n. (**vincio** *bind*), *a chain;* **in vincŭla conjicĕre,** *to throw into prison.*

vindĭco, ārē, āvī, ātŭm, *claim.* VINDICATE, VINDICATION.

vĭr, vĭri, m., *man; hero; husband.* See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.

virgŏ, ĭnĭs, f. (**vireo** *flourish, bloom*), VIRGIN.

virtūs, virtūtĭs, f. (**vir** *man, hero*), *valor, courage;* VIRTUE.

vīs, vīs, [acc. **vĭm,** dat. and abl. **vī**; pl., **vīrēs, vīrĭŭm, vīrĭbŭs,** etc.] f., *strength, power.*

vītă, æ, f. (**vivo** *live*), *life.* VITAL.

vītĭs, ĭs, f., *vine.*

vīto, ārē, āvī, ātŭm, *shun, avoid.*

vix, adv., *with difficulty; scarcely, hardly.*

vŏco, ārē, āvī, ātŭm, *call, summon, invite.* VOCATION, VOCATIVE.

vŏlo, vellĕ, vŏluī, *be* WILLING; *wish; desire* [see *125*].

vŏluntās, ātĭs, f. (**volo** *to wish*), *wish, consent.* VOLUNTARY.

vos, pers. pron. pl., *you* [see *112*].

vox, vōcĭs, f., VOICE. VOCAL.

vulnĕro, ārē, āvī, ātŭm (**vulnus** *wound*), *to wound.*

vulnŭs, vulnĕrĭs, *a wound.* VULNER-ABLE.

vulpes, ĭs, f., *fox.*

II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding. See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

A.

able, be able, **possum.**
about, w. numerals, **ad, circĭter.**
abundance, **copia.**
accuse, **accūso.**
across, **trans.**
adopt, **utor.**
advancing, **veniens.**
advise, **moneo.**
affair, **res.**
after, prep. **post**; conj. **postquam.**
afterwards, **postea.**
against, **in, contra.**
aid, **auxilium**; *to aid*, **juvo.**
all, every, **omnis**; pl. **ōmnes**; *all, the whole*, **totus.**
ally, **socius.**
almost, **paene, prope.**
alone, **solus.**
also, **etiam.**
although, **quum, etsi.**
ambassador, **legātus.**
among, **apud, inter, in.**
and, **et, atque, que**; *both — and*, **et — et.**
animal, **animal.**
announce, **nuncio.**
any, **quis, ullus.**
anything, **quid, alĭquid** (*116, a*).
appoint, **creo.**
arms, **arma.**
army, **exercĭtus, agmen.**
around, **circum.**
arrive, **pervenio.**
arrival, **adventus.**
ascertain, **cognosco.**
as soon as, **postquam**; *as soon as possible*, **quam primum.**
ask, **quaero**; *ask for*, **rogo.**
assemble, **convenio.**
assembly, **concilium.**
assist, **adsum.**
at home, **domi.**
attack, **impĕtus**; *to attack*, **oppugno.**
attempt, **conor.**
at Caesar's feet, **Caesari ad pedes.**
auxiliaries, **auxilia.**
avoid, **vito.**
away, take away, **tollo.**

B.

bad, **malus.**
baggage, **impedimenta.**
bank, **ripa.**
battle, **proelium, pugna.**
be, **sum**; *be present*, **adsum**; *be from* or *distant*, **absum.**
beautiful, **pulcher.**

because, **quod, quia.**
become, **fio**; *become master of*, **potior.**
before, **ante, prō**; **priusquam.**
beg for, **peto.**
beginning, **initium.**
besiege, **oppugno.**
best, **optĭmus.**
betake myself, **me confero, me recipio.**
better, **melior.**
between, **inter.**
big, **magnus.**
bold, **audax.**
born, be born, **nascor.**
both, **uterque**; *both — and*, **et — et.**
boy, **puer.**
brave, **fortis.**
bravely, **fortĭter.**
break up (camp), **(castra) moveo.**
bridge, **pons.**
bring, **fero**; *bring upon*, **infĕro.**
broad, **latus.**
brother, **frater.**
building, **aedificium.**
burn, **incendo, cremo**; *burn up*, **exūro, combūro.**
but if, **sin.**
buy, **emo.**
by, **a, ab**; *by no means*, **minĭme.**

C.

call, summon, **voco**; *call, name*, **appello**; *call together*, **convŏco**; *call to mind*, **commemŏro.**
camp, **castra**; *pitch a camp*, **castra pono**; *break up camp*, **castra moveo.**
can, **possum.**
capture, **expugno.**
carry, carry on, **gero**; *carry on war*, **bellum gero**; **bello.**
cart, **carrus.**
cause, **causa.**
cavalry, **equitātus**; *of cavalry*, **equester.**
cavalryman, **eques.**
censure, **accūso.**
character, **natūra.**
chief, **princeps.**
choose, **creo.**
citadel, **arx.**
citizen, **civis.**
city, **urbs.**
cliff, **rupes.**
cold, **frigus.**
collect, **comporto, conferō, condūco.**
come, **venio**; *come together*, **convenio**; *come to*, **pervenio.**
comitium, **comitium.**
command, be in command of, **praesum.**
company, in company, **una.**
complain, **queror.**
conceal, **occulto.**
concerning, **de.**
confidence, **fides.**
congratulate, **gratŭlor.**
conquer, **vinco.**
consent, **voluntas.**
consider, **habeo, duco.**
conspiracy, **conjuratio.**
consul, **consul**; *in the consulship of Caesar*, **Caesare consule.**
continually, **continenter.**
corn, **frumentum.**

could, past tense of **possum.**
council, **concilium.**
counsel, **consilium.**
country, fatherland, **patria.**
cowardly, **ignāvus.**
cross, **transeo.**

D.

danger, **periculum.**
dangerous, **periculōsus.**
daughter, **filia.**
dawn, at the earliest dawn, **prima luce.**
day, **dies**; *at daybreak*, **prima luce**; *on the day before*, **pridie.**
death, **mors.**
deceive, **decipio.**
decide, **statuo.**
decision, **judicium.**
deep, **altus.**
defend, **defendo.**
delay, **moror.**
deliberate, **delibĕro.**
demand, **postŭlo, posco.**
depart, **discēdo.**
departure, **profectio.**
describe, **designo.**
design, **consilium.**
desire, **studium, cupidĭtas.**
desirous, **cupĭdus.**
destroy, **deleo.**
destruction, **pernicies.**
determine, **judĭco.**
devastate, **vasto.**
die, **morior.**
differ, **differo.**
difficulty, **angustiae**; *with difficulty*, **vix.**
dig, **fodio.**
direction, **para.**
distance, **spatium.**
distant, be distant, **absum**; *most distant*, **extrēmus.**
distinguished, **nobĭlis.**
disturb, **commoveo.**
ditch, **fossa.**
divulge, **enuncio.**
do, **facio.**
draw, **duco.**
dwell, **incŏlo.**

E.

each, to each other, **inter se.**
easily, **facĭle.**
easy, **facĭlis**; *very easy*, **perfacĭlis.**
either — or, **aut — aut.**
elect, **creo.**
embassy, **legatio.**
empire, **imperium.**
empty, **influo.**
encamp, **castra pono**; **consĭdo**
encompass, **contĭneo.**
encourage, **confirmo.**
end, **finis.**
endeavor, **nitor.**
endure, **subeo.**
enemy, **hostis.**
enervate, **effemĭno.**
entire, **totus.**
entreat, **implōro, oro.**
equal, **par, aequus.**
establish, **confirmo.**
even, not even, **ne — quidem.**
excel, **praecēdo, praesto.**
exhort, **hortor.**
expectation, **spes.**

extraordinary, **incredibĭlis.**
eye, **ocŭlus.**

F.

far, by far, **longe**; *very far*, **longissĭme.**
farther, adj., **ulterior**; adv., **longius.**
father, **pater.**
father-in-law, **socer.**
fatherland, **patria.**
favor, **faveo.**
fear, **timor**; *to fear*, **timeo, vereor.**
few, **pauci.**
field, **ager.**
fifteen, **quindĕcim.**
fifth, **quintus.**
fight, **pugno.**
find, **reperio.**
fire, **ignis**; *set on fire*, **incendo.**
first, **primus**; *in the first part of the night*, **prima nocte.**
five, **quinque.**
flight, **fuga.**
flee, **fugio.**
flow, **fluo.**
follow, **sequor.**
fond, **cupĭdus.**
foot, **pes**; *at the foot of the mountain*, **sub monte.**
for, **de** w. abl., **ad** w. acc.; *for this reason*, **hoc, eo.**
foraging, **pabulatio.**
forest, **silva.**
forget, **obliviscor.**
former, **pristĭnus, vetus.**
forth, lead forth, **edūco.**
fortify, **munio.**
fortune, **fortūna.**
forward, send forward, **praemitto**; *move forward*, **promoveo.**
free, **liber**; *of one's own free will*, **sua sponte.**
friend, **amīcus.**
friendly, **amīcus.**
friendship, **amicitia.**
from, from near, **a, ab**; *from out of*, **e, ex.**
furiously, **vehementer.**
furnish, **facio.**
furthermost, **extrēmus.**
future, in the future, **in relĭquum tempus.**

G.

garrison, **praesidium.**
general, **imperātor.**
generosity, **liberalĭtas.**
get possession of, **potior.**
get rid of, **depōno.**
girl, **puella.**
give, **do**; *give orders*, **impĕro**; *give satisfaction*, **satisfacio.**
glory, **gloria.**
go, **eo**; *go forth*, **exeo.**
god, **deus.**
goddess, **dea.**
gone, perf. part. of **exĭgo.**
good, **bonus.**
government, **imperium.**
grandfather, **avus.**
grant, **concēdo.**
great, **magnus**; *so great*, **tantus.**
grievous, **gravis.**
guard, **custos.**

H.

happen, **accĭdo, fio.**
happy, **felix.**
harass, **vexo.**
hasten, **matūro, contendo, accurro.**
have, **habeo.**
he says, **dicit.**
hear, **audio.**
height, **altitūdo.**
help, **juvo.**
hem in, **contineo.**
high, **altus.**
highest, **summus.**
hill, **collis.**
hindrance, **impedimentum.**
his, his own, **suus.**
hither, **citerior.**
hold, **habeo, obtineo, teneo**; *hold a conference*, **collŏquor.**
home, at home, **domi**; *homeward*, **domum**; *from home*, **domo.**
hope, **spes.**
horse, **equus.**
hostage, **obses.**
hour, **hora.**
house, **domus.**
hurl, **conjicio.**
husband, **vir.**

I.

I, **ego.**
if, **si.**
implore, **implōro.**
import, **importo.**
in, into, **in.**
incite, **facio.**
influence, **auctorĭtas.**
influenced, **adductus.**
inform Caesar, **Caesărem certiōrem facio.**
infuse, **injicio.**
inquire, **quaero.**
insult, **contumelia.**
intervene, **intersum.**
invite, **arcesso.**

J.

just, **justus.**

K.

keep, **teneo**; *keep from*, **prohibeo.**
kill, **caedo, interficio.**
kindness, **beneficium.**
king, **rex.**
know, **scio**; *know, find out*, **cognosco**; *not know*, **nescio.**

L.

land, **terra.**
language, **lingua.**
large, **magnus.**
late in the day, **multo die.**
law, **lex, jus.**
lay waste, **vasto.**
lead, **duco**; *lead forth*, **edūco.**
leader, **dux.**
leave, **relinquo.**
left, **sinister.**
legate, **legātus.**
legion, **legio.**
letter, **epistŏla.**

levy on, **impōno.**
lieutenant, **legātus.**
like, **simĭlis.**
line of battle, **acies.**
little, **paulus**; *a little*, **paulo.**
lofty airs, **spirĭtus.**
long, *for a long time*, **diu**; *longer*, **diutius.**
look at, **intueor**; *look out for*, **prospicio.**
love, **amor**; *to love*, **amo.**

M.

make, **facio**; *make* or *deliver a speech*, **oratiōnem habeo**; *make haste*, **matūro**; *make upon*, **infĕro.**
man, **vir, homo.**
manner, *in such a manner*, **ita.**
many, **multi.**
march, **iter**; *to march*, **iter facĕre.**
marriage, **matrimonium**; *to give in marriage*, **in matrimonium dare.**
master, *become master of*, **potior.**
means, *by no means*, **minĭme**; *by means of*, see **54.**
memory, **memoria.**
mile, **mille passuum.**
mind, **anĭmus, mens.**
misfortune, **incommŏdum.**
missile, **telum.**
month, **mensis.**
more, **magis, amplius**; *be more willing*, **malo.**
mother, **mater.**
mountain, **mons.**
move, **moveo**; *move forward*, **promoveo.**
much, **multus.**
multitude, **multitūdo.**
murder, **caedes**; *to murder*, **caedo, occīdo.**
my, *my own*, **meus.**

N.

narrow pass, **angustiae.**
nature, **natūra.**
near, **circum, ad.**
nearest, **proxĭmus.**
nearly, **fere.**
neighbors, **finitĭmi.**
neither — nor, **neque — neque.**
nine, **novem.**
no, *none*, **nullus.**
nobility, **nobilĭtas.**
noble, **nobĭlis.**
not, **non**; *not — even*, **ne — quidem.**
none the less, **nihĭlo minus.**
nothing, **nihil.**
notice, **animadverto.**
number, **numĕrus.**

O.

obtain, **obtineo, consĕquor.**
occupy, **occŭpo.**
often, **saepe.**
old, **vetus, natus.**
on, *upon*, **in.**
on account of, **propter.**
on all sides, **undĭque.**
on the day before, **pridie.**
one, **unus.**

one by one, **singŭli**.
one party — the other, **altĕri — altĕri**.
opinion, **sententia**.
opportunity, **potestas, facultas**.
or, **aut, vel, an**.
order, give orders, **impĕro**.
other, **alius**; *to each other, from each other*, **inter se**.
ought, **oportet, debeo**. See also Ln. LXX.
our, our own, **noster**.
out, set out, **proficiscor**; *out of*, **e, ex**.
overcome, **supĕro**.
own, his own, **suus**; *my own*, **meus**; *your own*, **tuus, vester**; *their own*, **suus**.

P.

pace, **passus**.
part, **pars**.
party, one party — the other, **altĕri — altĕri**.
pass the winter, **hiĕmo**.
peace, **pax**.
people, **popŭlus**.
peril, **periculum**.
persist, **persevēro**.
persuade, **persuadeo**.
pitch a camp, **castra pono**.
place, **locus**; *place, put*, **pono**.
plan, **consilium**.
please, **placeo**.
pledge, **fides**.
poor, **pauper**.
possession, **possessio**; *get possession of*, **potior**.
power, royal power, sovereign power, **regnum**.
practicable, **facĭlis**.
practice, **exercitatio**.
praetor, **praetor**.
prepare, **compăro**.
present, be present, **adsum**.
press, press upon, **premo**.
prevail upon, **permoveo**.
prevent, **retineo**.
price, **pretium**.
private, **privātus**.
proceed, **procēdo**.
promise, **polliceor**.
protection, **praesidium**.
province, **provincia**.
provisions, **commeātus**.
pursue, **persĕquor**.
put off, **confĕro**.

R.

ready, **parātus**.
rear of an army, **agmen novissĭmum**.
reason, **causa**.
recall to mind, **reminiscor**.
recent, **recens**.
refinement, **humanĭtas**.
reign, **regno**.
rejoice, **laetor**.
relief, **subsidium**.
remain, **maneo**.
remaining, **relĭquus**.
remember, **memĭni**; **memoriā teneo**.
remembrance, **memoria**.
remove, **moveo, removeo**.

reply, **responsum**; *to reply*, **respondeo.**
report, **enuncio.**
resolve, **constituo.**
rest, the rest, **cetĕri**; *rest of*, **relĭquus.**
restrain, **retineo, prohibeo.**
return, **revertor, reverto.**
revenue, **vectīgal.**
reward, **praemium.**
rich, **dives.**
ridge, **jugum.**
right, **dexter.**
ripe, **matūrus.**
river, **flūmen.**
road, **via.**
rout, **pello.**
route, **iter.**
royal power, **regnum.**
ruin, **pernicies.**

S.

sad, **tristis.**
sake, for the sake of, **causā.**
same, the same, **idem.**
satisfaction, give satisfaction, **satisfacio.**
satisfy, **satisfacio.**
say, **dico**; *he says*, **dicit.**
sea, **mare.**
see, **video.**
seem, **videor**; *it seems good*, **vidētur.**
seize, **occŭpo.**
select, **delĭgo.**
sell, **vendo.**
senator, **senātor.**
send, **mitto**; *send forward*, **praemitto.**
separate, **divĭdo.**
set on fire, **incendo.**
set out, **proficiscor.**
severely, **gravĭter, vehementer.**
ship, **navis.**
short, **brevis**; *shortest way* or *route*, **proxĭmum iter.**
show, **probo.**
shun, **vito.**
side, this side of, **citra.**
sides, on all sides, **undĭque.**
sight, **conspectus.**
signal, **signum.**
since, **quum.**
single, **unus.**
sister, **soror.**
skilful, **perītus.**
slave, **servus.**
slavery, **servĭtus.**
small, **parvus.**
so, **ita**; with adjectives, **tam**; *so great*, **tantus.**
soldier, **miles.**
some, some one, **alĭquis.** See ***116, a.***
son, **filius**; *son-in-law*, **gener.**
soon, **matūre.**
sovereignty, sovereign power, **regnum.**
Spain, **Hispania.**
speak, **loquor.**
speech, **oratio**; *make, deliver a speech*, **oratiōnem habeo.**
stand, **sto.**
state, **civĭtas.**
station, **collŏco, constituo.**
stay, **maneo.**
storm, **expugno.**
strengthen, **confirmo.**

strive, **nitor.**
such, **tantus.**
sufficient, sufficiently, **satis**; *with sufficient ease*, **satis commŏde.**
suitable, **idoneus, commŏdus.**
summer, **aestas.**
summon, **voco, convŏco.**
sunset, **occāsus solis.**
supply, **copia**; *supplies*, **res frumentaria, commeātus.**
surround, **cingo.**
survive, **supersum.**
suspicion, **suspicio.**
swiftly, **celerĭter.**

T.

take, capture, **capio, expugno**; *take away*, **tollo**; *take* to one's self, **sumo.**
tarry, **moror.**
teach, **doceo.**
ten, **decem.**
tend, **pertineo.**
territory, **ager, fines.**
than, **quam.**
that, **ille.**
that, in order that, **ut**; after verbs of *fearing*, **nē.**
that not, **nē**; after verbs of *fearing*, **ut.**
the same, **idem.**
there, in that place, **ibi.**
their, their own, **suus.**
they, them, see LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
thing, **res.**
think, **puto, abĭtror.**
third, **tertius.**
this, **hic.**
those, **illi.**
three days, **triduum.**
three hundred, **trecenti.**
through, **per.**
throw one's self, **se projicĕre.**
till evening, **ad vespĕrum.**
time, **tempus**; *for a long time*, **diu.**
to, **ad.**
to-day, **hodie.**
together, come together, **convenio.**
tongue, **lingua.**
top of the mountain, **summus mons.**
towards, **ad**; *towards the north*, **sub septemtrionĭbus.**
tower, **turris.**
town, **oppĭdum.**
trader, **mercātor.**
train up, **instituo.**
tribute, **stipendium.**
troops, **copiae.**
try, **conor.**
twenty, **viginti.**
two days, **biduum.**

U.

under, **sub.**
unoccupied, be unoccupied, **vaco.**
until, **dum.**
unwilling, be unwilling, **nolo.**
upon, **in.**
upper, **superior.**
urge, **hortor.**
use, **utor**; *make use of*, **utor.**
useful, **utĭlis.**

V.

valor, **virtus.**
very, **valde**; *very easy*, **perfacĭlis**; *very great*, **maxĭmus**; *very* is often rendered by **ipse**: e. g. *the very city*, **urbs ipsa.**
vicinity, *in* or *into the vicinity of*, **ad** w. name of town in acc.
victory, **victoria.**

W.

wage, **gero.**
wages, **merces.**
wagon, **carrus.**
wait, **exspecto.**
walled town, **oppĭdum.**
wanting, *be wanting*, **desum.**
war, **bellum.**
waste, *lay waste*, **vasto.**
watch, **vigilia**; *in the third watch*, **de tertia vigilia.**
way, **via.**
we, **nos.** See Ln. LVII.
wealthy, **copiōsus.**
weapon, **tēlum.**
weep, **fleo**; *weeping*, **flens.**
what? **quid?**
what sort of a? **qui?** See Ln. LX.
when, **quum.**
where, **ubi.**
whether, **utrum.**
which, **quod.**
while, **dum.**
who, **qui**; *who?* **quis?**
whole, **totus.**
why? **quid?**
wide, **latus.**
willing, *be willing*, **volo.**
win, **concilio.**
wing of an army, **cornu.**
winter, *pass the winter*, **hiĕmo.**
winter-quarters, **hiberna.**
wish, **volo.**
with, **cum.**
withdraw, **se recipĕre.**
without, **sine.**
withstand, **sustineo.**
witness, **testis.**
woman, **mulier.**
word, **verbum.**
worthy, **dignus.**
wound, **vulnus**; *to wound*, **vulnĕro.**
write, **scribo.**
wrong, **injuria.**

Y.

year, **annus.**
yet, **tamen.**
yoke, **jugum.**
you, **tu**, **vos.** See Ln. LVII.
your, **tuus**, **vester.**
youth, **adolescens.**

REFERENCES

TO

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

LATEST EDITION (1877).

N. B. The References in the body of the book are to the edition of 1875.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

1. Alphabet. 1; 2.

2. Syllables and Pronunciation. (*a*) *Roman Method.* 14, *a*–*d*; 16, N. B. (*b*) *English Method.* 17, *a*–*d*, and NOTE.

3. Quantity. 18, *a*–*e*, and N. B.

4. Accent. 19, *a*–*c*, including DEFINITION.

5. Inflection, Stem, Parts of Speech. 20; 21; 25, *a*–*k*; 26; 27.

6. Gender. 28, *a*, *c*; 29, *c*; 30.

7. Number and Case. 31, *a*–*h*, and NOTE.

8. Declension of Nouns. 32, *a*, *b*; 33, *a*–*g*; 21.

LESSON I. ***9.*** FIRST DECLENSION. Learn the *declension*, *stem*, *case-endings*, *meanings*, and *rule of gender.* 35 with the preceding NOTE; 36 *c*.

LESS II. ***11.*** Declension of **dea** and **filia.** 36 *e*.

12. Use of Prepositions. 260.

LESS. III. ***13.*** SECOND DECLENSION. Learn the declension of nouns in **ŭs.** 38, **servus** and *first part* of the preceding NOTE; 40 *a*.

14. Gender. 39.

LESS. IV. ***15.*** Nouns in **r** and **um.** 38, **puer, ager, vir, bellŭm,** and *second part* of the preceding NOTE.

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. 152 *b*.

LESS. V. **17.** Genitive of nouns in **ius** or **ium.** 40 *b.*
18. Vocative of **filius** and proper names in **ius.** 40 *c.*
19. Use of **in** and **sub.** 152 *c.*
LESS. VI. **21.** ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. Learn the declension of **bonus.** 81.
22. Agreement of Adjectives. 186.
LESS. VII. **23.** Learn the declension of **miser** and **niger.** 82.
24. Genitive in **ĭŭs** and Dative in **ī.** 83, *a*, *b.*
LESS. VIII. **25.** Apposition. 183; 184.
LESS. IX. **26.** VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS. 108, *a*–*d*; 111; 121; 122, *a*; 264; 276.
LESS. X. **27.** FIRST CONJUGATION. *Stem*, and *Personal Endings* of the Active Voice. 21; 116; learn also **28** and **30** of this book.
29. Learn the *conjugation* and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of **amo.** 128 page 76.
LESS. XI. **31.** THE SIMPLE SENTENCE. 171; 172; 177; 180; 181.
32. Subject Nominative. 173.
33. Agreement of Verb. 204.
34. Direct Object. 237.
LESS. XII. **35.** Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of **amo.** 118 (*for verb-endings*); 128 page 76 (*for conjugation*); also **37** of this book.
36. Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses. 277; 278.
LESS. XIII. **38.** Modifiers of the Subject and Predicate. 178, *a*, *b*; 179.
39. Indirect Object. 224.
40. Genitive with Nouns. 213.
LESS. XIV. **41.** Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of **amo.** 118; 128 page 76; also **45** of this book.
42. Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses. 280; 281.
43. The two Uses of the Perfect Indicative. 115 *c*; 279.
LESS. XV. **46.** Learn the Imperative Active of **amo** and its meanings. 118; 128 page 77.
47. Use of the Imperative. 269.

LESS. XVI.	*48.*	Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of **amo.** 118, 2; 128 page 77; 289; also *50* and *51* of this book.
	49.	Principal Parts of a Verb. 122 *b*, 1 – 4, *c*, 1.
LESS. XVII.	*52.*	Infinitive as Object. 272.
	53.	Subject of the Infinitive. 240 *f*.
LESS. XVIII.	*54.*	Ablative of Means. 248.
LESS. XIX.	*55.*	THIRD DECLENSION. Review 21; 32, *a*, *b*, NOTE; 33, *a* – *g*.
	56.	Liquid-Stems. 48, *a* – *d*; 49.
LESS. XX.	*57.*	Mute-Stems. 44; 45, *a* – *c*; 46.
LESS. XXI.	*58.*	Two Accusatives. 239.
LESS. XXII.	*59.*	Review 44 – 50, including the Paradigms.
	60.	Rules of Gender. 65, *a* – *c*.
LESS. XXIII.	*61.*	Vowel-Stems. 51 *c*; 52; 53, *a*, *b*; 54; 55, *a* – *e*.
LESS. XXIV.	*62.*	Learn the entire conjugation of **sum.** 119.
	63.	What is an Irregular Verb? 137.
LESS. XXV.	*64.*	Predicate Noun and Adjective. 176, *a*, *b*; 183; 185; 186, *b*.
LESS. XXVI.	*65.*	The Subjunctive Mood. 265, *a*, *b*.
LESS. XXVII.	*66.*	Compounds of **sum.** 120, *a*, *b*, **prosum.**
	67.	Dative with Compounds. 228.
LESS. XXVIII.	*68.*	Conjugation of **possum.** 120, *b*.
	69.	Complementary Infinitive. 271.
LESS. XXIX.	*70.*	Learn the Subjunctive Active of **amo.** 118; 128 page 76.
LESS. XXX.	*71.*	Two Accusatives. 239 *c* and REMARK.
LESS. XXXI.	*72.*	PASSIVE VOICE. Personal Endings. 116.
	73.	Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of **amo,** and meanings. 118; 129 page 78.
LESS. XXXII.	*74.*	Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of **amo.** 118; 129 page 78.
LESS. XXXIII.	*75.*	Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of **amo.** 118; 129 page 79.
LESS. XXXIV.	*76.*	Learn the Subjunctive Passive of **amo.** 118; 129 page 78.

LESS. XXXV.	*77.*	DEPONENT VERBS. Definition. 135.
	78.	Learn the entire conjugation of **miror.** 135, *a*, *c*.
LESS. XXXVI.	*79.*	Ablative of Cause. 245.
	80.	Compound and Complex Sentences. 180, *a*–*f*.
LESS. XXXVII.	*81.*	ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION. 84, **levis, acer,** *b*, *c*.
LESS. XXXVIII.	*82.*	Learn the declension of **atrox, egens, praeceps, par, dives, vetus.** 85; 87, *a*, *c*.
LESS. XXXIX.	*83.*	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. 89, *a*.
	84.	Declension of Comparatives. 86, **melior,** *a*.
LESS. XL.	*85.*	Comparison (continued). 89, *b*–*e*; 90; 91, *a*.
LESS. XLI.	*86.*	Dative with Adjectives. 234.
LESS. XLII.	*87.*	ADVERBS. Definition. 25 *f*.
	88.	Derivation. 148, *a*, *b*.
	89.	Classification. 149, *a*–*e*.
	90.	Comparison. 92.
	91.	Syntax. 207.
LESS. XLIII.	*92.*	VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION. Learn the entire Active Voice of **moneo.** 130 on pages 80 and 81.
LESS. XLIV.	*93.*	Time *how long*. 256.
LESS. XLV.	*94.*	Learn the entire Passive Voice of **moneo.** 130.
LESS. XLVI.	*95.*	Learn the entire conjugation of **vereor.** 135, *a*, *c*.
LESS. XLVII.	*96.*	FOURTH DECLENSION. 68 with the preceding NOTE; 69, *a*, *b*.
	97.	Declension of **domus.** 70 *f*.
LESS. XLVIII.	*98.*	FIFTH DECLENSION. 72 with the preceding NOTE; 73; 74 *d*.
LESS. XLIX.	*99.*	VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION. Learn the entire Active Voice of **tego.** 131 on pages 82 and 83; also 99 *a*, *b*, *c* of this book.
LESS. L.	*100.*	Learn the entire Passive Voice of **tego.** 131 on pages 82 and 83.
LESS. LI.	*101.*	VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION. Learn the entire conjugation of **audio,** Active and Passive. 132 on pages 86, 87; also 101 *a* of this book.

LESS. LII.	*102.*	THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN **io.** Learn the entire conjugation of **capio,** Active and Passive. 131 on page 83.
LESS. LIII.	*103.*	Learn the entire conjugation of **sequor** and **potior.** 135, *a, c.*
	104.	Ablative with certain Deponents. 249.
LESS. LIV.	*105.*	Place *to which.* 258, *b.*
	106.	Place *at* or *in which.* 258, *c, d.*
	107.	Place *from which.* 258, *a.*
LESS. LV.	*108.*	NUMERALS. Learn the Cardinals and Ordinals, the declension of **unus, duo, tres, mille.** 94, *a* – *e.*
	109.	Extent of Space. 257.
LESS. LVI.	*110.*	Compound Nouns. 79 *d.*
	111.	Time *when.* 256.
LESS. LVII.	*112.*	PRONOUNS. Learn the declension of **ego, tu, sui.** 98, *b, c*; 99, *d, e.*
LESS. LVIII.	*113.*	Learn the declension of **hic, is, ille, ipse, idem, iste.** 100; 101, *a*; 102 *a–d.*
LESS. LIX.	*114.*	Learn the declension of **qui.** 103; 104 *e.*
	115.	Agreement of Relative. 198.
LESS. LX.	*116.*	Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns. 104, *a, e*; 105 *d.*
LESS. LXI.	*117.*	CONJUNCTIONS. 25 *h*; 154, *a, b*; 208.
LESS. LXII.	*118.*	Sentences. 171 – 182, *coarse and fine print.*
LESS. LXIII.	*119.*	PARTICIPLES. 25 *e*; 289.
	120.	Distinctions of Tense. 290.
	121.	Predicate Use. 292.
LESS. LXIV.	*122.*	Ablative Absolute. 255; read carefully the NOTE, top of page 177.
LESS. LXV.	*123.*	IRREGULAR VERBS. Learn the entire conjugation of **fero.** 137; 139.
LESS. LXVI.	*124.*	Ablative of Specification. 253.
LESS. LXVII.	*125.*	Learn the conjugation of **volo, nolo, malo.** 138.
LESS. LXVIII.	*126.*	Learn the conjugation of **eo** and **fio.** 141; 142.
LESS. LXIX.	*127.*	DEFECTIVE VERBS. 143, *a, b, c,* NOTE.
	128.	IMPERSONAL VERBS. 145.
	129.	Infinitive as Subject. 270.

Less. LXX.	*130.*	The Periphrastic Conjugations. 109, *a*; 129.
	131.	Dative of Agency. 232.
Less. LXXI.	*132.*	Dative with Intransitive Verbs. 226; 227.
Less. LXXII.	*133.*	Ablative with Comparatives. 247.
	134.	Hortatory Subjunctive. 266. Optative Subjunctive. 267.
Less. LXXIII.	*135.*	Sequence of Tenses. 283–286.
	136.	Subjunctive of Purpose. 317.
Less. LXXIV.	*137.*	Dative of Possession. 231.
	138.	Dative of Service. 233.
Less. LXXV.	*139.*	Subjunctive of Result. 319, *d*; 332 *a*.
Less. LXXVI.	*140.*	Genitive with Adjectives. 218.
	141.	Genitive in Predicate. 214 *c*.
	142.	Genitive with certain Verbs. 219.
Less. LXXVII.	*143.*	Conditional Sentences. 304; 305; 306; 307, *a*, *b*, *c*; 308.
Less. LXXVIII.	*144.*	Ablative denoting Degree of Difference. 250.
	144, a.	Ablative of Quality. 251.
Less. LXXIX.	*145.*	Concessive Clauses. 313; 326.
Less. LXXX.	*146.*	Ablative of Price. 252.
	147.	Ablative of Distance. 257 *b*.
	148.	Ablative with Adjectives. 245 *a*.
Less. LXXXI.	*149.*	Causal Clauses. 321, *a*, *b*, *c*; 326.
Less. LXXXII.	*150.*	Temporal Clauses. 323; 325; 327; 328.
Less. LXXXIII.	*151.*	The Indirect Question. 334 with Note at bottom of page 245.
Less. LXXXIV.	*152.*	Indirect Discourse. 335; 336; 339; read carefully the Note preceding 335 and the Remark following it.
Less. LXXXVII.	*153.*	The Gerund. 295.
Less. LXXXVIII.	*154.*	The Gerundive. 296.
Less. LXXXIX.	*155.*	The Supine. 302 with the preceding Note; 303.
Less. XC.	*156.*	The Roman Calendar. 376, *a–d*; read also the Note preceding 376.
	157.	Proper Names and Abbreviations. 80, *a–d*.

EDUCATIONAL PUBLICATIONS

OF

S. C. GRIGGS & CO., CHICAGO.

RETAIL PRICES.

BOISE'S FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. Adapted to Goodwin's and Hadley's Larger and Smaller Greek Grammars, and intended as an Introduction for Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D. $1.25.

BOISE'S FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin and Hadley. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. $1.00.

BOISE'S FIRST SIX BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin and Hadley. A new Edition, with Notes revised and largely rewritten. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. $1.50.

BOISE AND FREEMAN'S SELECTIONS FROM VARIOUS GREEK AUTHORS. For the first year in College, with explanatory Notes, and References to Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and to Hadley's Larger and Smaller Grammars. $2.00.

BOISE'S EXERCISES IN GREEK SYNTAX. Being Exercises in some of the more difficult Principles of Greek Syntax; with References to the Crammars of Crosby, Curtius, Goodwin, Hadley, Koch, and Kühner. A Sequel to "Jones's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition," and intended for the first year in College. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph D., LL D. $1.50.

JONES'S EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. With References to Hadley's, Goodwin's, and Taylor's-Kühner's Greek Grammars, and a full English-Greek Vocabulary. By ELISHA JONES, A.M., University of Michigan. $1.00.

D'OOGE'S DEMOSTHENES ON THE CROWN. With Extracts from the Oration of Æschines against Ctesiphon, and Explanatory Notes. By M. L. D'OOGE, Ph.D., Professor of Greek, University of Michigan. $1.75.

STEVENS'S SELECT ORATIONS OF LYSIAS. With Introductions, and Explanatory Notes. By Professor W. A. STEVENS, A.M. $1.50.

JONES'S FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. Adapted to the Latin Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Gildersleeve, and Harkness, and prepared as an Introduction to Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. By ELISHA JONES, A.M., University of Michigan. $1.25.

JONES'S EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. With References to the Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By ELISHA JONES, A.M. $1 00.

THOMPSON'S FIRST LATIN BOOK. By D. G. THOMPSON, A.M. $1 50.

ZUR BRÜCKE'S GERMAN WITHOUT GRAMMAR OR DICTIONARY; or, A Guide to Learning and Teaching the German Language, according to the Pestalozzian method of teaching, by Object Lessons. Part I. $0.50.

ZUR BRÜCKE'S GERMAN, ETC. PART II. 12mo. Cloth. $1.25.

PETERSON'S NORWEGIAN-DANISH GRAMMAR AND READER. With a Vocabulary, designed for American Students of the Norwegian-Danish Language. By Professor C. I. P. PETERSON. $1.25.

ANDERSON'S NORSE MYTHOLOGY; or, The Religion of our Forefathers. Containing all the Myths of the Eddas carefully systematized and interpreted, with an Introduction, Vocabulary, and Index. By R. B. ANDERSON, A.M., Professor in the University of Wisconsin. $2.50.

BACON'S MANUAL OF GESTURE. With 100 Figures, embracing a complete System of Notation, with the Principles of Interpretation, and Selections for Practice. By Professor A. M. Bacon. $1.50.

BUCKINGHAM'S ELEMENTS OF THE DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS. By a New Method, founded on the True System of Sir Isaac Newton, without the use of Infinitesimals or Limits. By Professor C. P. BUCKINGHAM. $2 00.

CROSS'S ECLECTIC SHORT-HAND. A new system adapted both to general use and to verbatim reporting. Complete in one volume. By J. G. CROSS, A.M. 12mo. Cloth. $2.00.

MAERTZ'S NEW METHOD FOR THE STUDY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. 12mo. Interleaved. $1.00.

MATHEWS'S ORATORY AND ORATORS. By WILLIAM MATHEWS, LL D. 12mo. Cloth. $2.00.

MATHEWS'S WORDS: THEIR USE AND ABUSE. By WILLIAM MATHEWS, LL.D., author of "Getting on in the World." $2.00.

ROBERT'S RULES OF ORDER, for Deliberative Assemblies. By Major H. M. ROBERT. $0.75.

"*Every teacher should have this book*, and at times resolve the school or the higher classes into a parliament, a talking body, and show his pupils how public business is done." — *Wisconsin Journal of Education.*

RAYMOND'S ORATOR'S MANUAL. A practical and philosophical treatise on Vocal Culture, Emphasis, and Gesture, together with selections for Declamation and Reading. Designed as a text-book for schools and colleges, and for public speakers and readers who are obliged to study without an instructor. By GEO. L. RAYMOND, M.A., Professor of Oratory, Williams College. 12mo. Cloth. $1.50.

*** *Descriptive circulars furnished on application.*

*** *Books will be mailed post-paid on receipt of price by the publishers.*